# M-Flex ${ }^{\text {TM }}$ Adjustable Speed Controllers 

1-450 hp CT \& 1-500 hp VT, 460 Vac;
$1-40 \mathrm{hp}$ CT \& 1-50 hp VT, 208/230 Vac

Instruction Bulletin

30072-451-52
Rev. 02, 07/2014
Retain for future use.

Hazard Categories and Special Symbols ..... 7
Before You Begin ..... 8
SECTION 1: INTRODUCTION AND TECHNICAL CHARACTERISTICS ..... 9
Introduction ..... 9
Related Documentation ..... 9
Terminology ..... 10
Precautions ..... 11
Controller Nameplate Identification ..... 11
Controller Catalog Numbers ..... 12
Technical Characteristics ..... 14
M-Flex Controller Ratings ..... 14
Input Current Ratings ..... 17
Specifications ..... 22
Standard Features ..... 23
Drive Only ..... 23
With Bypass ..... 23
Factory Modifications ..... 24
Power Options ..... 24
Control Options ..... 25
Light Options ..... 26
Option Cards ..... 28
Miscellaneous Options ..... 29
Total Dissipated Watts Loss ..... 30
Mounting Dimensions ..... 32
Weights ..... 47
SECTION 2: RECEIVING, INSTALLATION, AND START-UP ..... 49
Preliminary Inspection ..... 49
Handling the Controller ..... 50
Installation ..... 51
Mechanical Installation ..... 51
Seismic Qualification Mounting Criteria ..... 51
Electrical Installation ..... 56
General Wiring Practices ..... 56
Input Power ..... 56
Branch Circuit Connections ..... 57
Grounding ..... 57
Output Wiring ..... 59
Output Cable ..... 59
DC Bus Voltage Measurement Procedure ..... 61
Wire Routing and Interconnection ..... 62
Wire Class ..... 62
Noise Class ..... 62
Voltage Class ..... 62
Wiring Methods ..... 63
Component Identification and Terminal Strip Locations ..... 64
Power Wiring ..... 68
Wire Range and Power Terminal Torque Requirements ..... 68
Control Wiring ..... 75
Initial Startup Procedure ..... 77
Start-Up Procedure ..... 78
Step 1: Checking the Enclosure Components and Connections ..... 78
Step 2: Providing Motor Overload Protection and Thermal Protection ..... 79
Overload Relay Adjustment ..... 79
Step 3: Testing Motor Rotation ..... 80
Correcting Motor Rotation ..... 80
Step 4: Testing Motor Rotation in Bypass Mode ..... 81
Correcting Motor Rotation in Bypass Mode ..... 81
Step 5: Checking the Graphic Display Settings ..... 81
Circuit Breaker Trip Adjustment Procedure ..... 83
Start-Up Checklist ..... 86
Customer Readiness Acknowledgment ..... 87
SECTION 3: CIRCUIT DESCRIPTIONS AND OPTIONS ..... 89
Introduction ..... 89
Terminal Command Versus Keypad Command Operation ..... 89
Graphic Display Terminal Operation ..... 90
Trip Reset ..... 90
Control Circuit Sequencing and Operation ..... 90
Run Command Relay (RCR) ..... 90
Auxiliary Run Command Relay (ARCR) ..... 91
Auxiliary Drive Run Relay (ADRR1) ..... 91
Auxiliary Drive Run Relay (ADRR2) ..... 91
Auxiliary Drive Trip Relay (ADFR1) ..... 91
Auxiliary Drive Trip Relay (ADFR2) ..... 91
Auxiliary Transfer Bypass Relay (ATB) ..... 91
Communication Mode Relay (CMR) ..... 91
Check Valve Sequence (CVS) Relay ..... 91
Trip Reset ..... 92
Power Circuits-General ..... 92
Controller Operation ..... 92
Interlocks ..... 92
Power Circuit W (Drive Only) ..... 92
Operator Controls-General Arrangement and Operation (Drive Only) ..... 93
Power Circuit Y (Integrated Bypass) ..... 93
Power Circuit Z (Barriered Bypass) ..... 93
Operator Controls-General Arrangement and Operation (Bypass) ..... 94
Test-Normal Operation ..... 94
Bypass Operation ..... 94
Engineered Power Circuits ..... 95
Power Circuit R (Isolation And Transfer-RVAT) ..... 95
Power Circuit S (Barriered Bypass-SSRVS) ..... 95
Power Circuit T (Isolation and Transfer) ..... 95
Modifications ..... 95
Control Function Descriptions (A07-F07) ..... 95
Hand Mode (2-Wire Control-Without Start/Stop) ..... 95
Hand Mode (3-Wire Control-With Start/Stop) ..... 95
Off Mode ..... 95
Auto Mode ..... 96
Start Push Button ..... 96
Stop Push Button ..... 96
Manual Speed Potentiometer ..... 96
Forward/Reverse ..... 96
Local/Remote ..... 96
Communication Mode ..... 96
Pilot Light Option Clusters (A08-F08) ..... 97
Power On (red) ..... 97
AFC Run (green) ..... 97
Auto (yellow) ..... 97
Trip (yellow) ..... 97
Bypass (yellow) ..... 97
Forward (green) ..... 97
Reverse (green) ..... 97
Hand (blue) ..... 97
Comm (yellow) ..... 97
Communication Options ..... 98
A09: Modbus Plus ..... 98
B09: Modbus/Uni-Telway ..... 98
C09: Metasys N2 ..... 98
D09: Ethernet ..... 98
E09: LONWORKS ..... 98
F09: DeviceNet ..... 98
G09: Profibus ..... 98
H09: I/O Extension Card ..... 98
J09: Apogee P1 ..... 98
K09: BACnet ..... 98
L09: Interbus ..... 98
M09: Fipio ..... 98
O09: Bluetooth USB ..... 98
P09: Bluetooth Modbus ..... 98
Q09: Bluetooth USB and Modbus ..... 98
Miscellaneous Options ..... 99
A10: 5\% Line Reactor ..... 99
B10: Line Contactor ..... 99
C10: 3-15 psi Transducer with Digital Display (TB2-G1/S2+ to TB2-J/S3) ..... 99
D10: Omit Graphic Display Terminal ..... 99
E10: Smoke Purge Relay (TB1-48 to TB1-49) ..... 99
F10: Additional Control Power VA (TB1-1 to TB1-50) ..... 99
G10: cUL Listing ..... 99
H10: Seismic Qualified ..... 99
I10: Permanent Wire Marker Sleeves ..... 99
J10: 0-10 V Auto Speed Reference (TB2-G1/S2+ to J-S3) ..... 99
K10: Additional N.O. Auxiliary Drive Run Contact (TB1-57 to TB1-58) ..... 100
L10: Additional N.C. Auxiliary Drive Trip Contact (TB1-59 to TB1-60) ..... 100
M10: N.O. Auxiliary Bypass Run Contact (TB1-61 to TB1-62) ..... 100
O10: N.O. Auxiliary Auto Mode Contact (TB1-63 to TB1-64) ..... 100
P10: AFC Trip Reset (TB2-A to TB2-C) ..... 100
Q10: Push-to-Test Pilot Lights ..... 100
R10: Auto Transfer to Bypass
(TB1-23 to TB1-27 and TB1-22 to TB1-23) ..... 100
S10: Motor Elapsed Time Meter (TB1-44 to TB1-50) ..... 100
T10: Emergency Stop (TB1-2 to TB1-3) ..... 100
U10: Motor Space Heater Sequencing (TB1-45 to TB1-50) ..... 101
V10: Seal Water Solenoid (TB1-43 to TB1-50) ..... 101
W10: Check Valve Sequencing (TB1-46 to TB1-47) ..... 101
X10: I.D. Engraved Nameplates ..... 101
Y10: Harmonic Filter Provisions ..... 101
Z10: 24 Vdc Power Supply [TB2-O (+) to TB2-N (COM)] ..... 101
310: Order Engineered (Internal Use Only) ..... 101
410: RFI Suppressor ..... 101
610: 100 kAIC ..... 101
SECTION 4: MAINTENANCE AND SUPPORT ..... 103
Introduction ..... 103
External Signs of Damage ..... 104
Preventive Maintenance ..... 104
Field Replacement of Power Converters ..... 105
1-75 hp CT and 1-100 hp VT ..... 105
Removing the Power Converter Assembly ..... 105
Installing the Power Converter Assembly ..... 106
Field Replacement of the Heatsink Fan Assembly ..... 108
Removing the Heatsink Fan Assembly ..... 108
Installing the Heatsink Fan Assembly ..... 109
Field Replacement of the Stirring Fans ..... 109
Field Replacement of the Plenum Fans ..... 109
Technical Support ..... 110
Schneider Electric Services (On-Site) ..... 110
Schneider Electric Customer Training ..... 110
APPENDIX A: RENEWABLE PARTS ..... 111
APPENDIX B: FIELD INSTALLATION OF INLET VENT FILTER ASSEMBLY ..... 115
Overview ..... 115
Installation ..... 115
Maintenance ..... 116
Higher Horsepower Controllers (250-450 hp CT, 300-500 hp VT) ..... 116
APPENDIX C: FIELD REPLACEMENT OF POWER FUSES ..... 117
Overview ..... 117
Power Fuse Replacement ..... 117
Index: ..... 119

## Hazard Categories and Special Symbols

Read these instructions carefully and look at the equipment to become familiar with the device before trying to install, operate, service or maintain it. The following special messages may appear throughout this bulletin or on the equipment to warn of hazards or to call attention to information that clarifies or simplifies a procedure.
The addition of either symbol to a "Danger" or "Warning" safety label indicates that an electrical hazard exists which will result in personal injury if the instructions are not followed.

This is the safety alert symbol. It is used to alert you to potential personal injury hazards. Obey all safety messages that follow this symbol to avoid possible injury or death.

## A DANGER

DANGER indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.

## A WARNING

WARNING indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, can result in death or serious injury.

## ACAUTION

CAUTION indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, can result in minor or moderate injury.

## NOTICE

NOTICE is used to address practices not related to physical injury. The safety alert symbol is not used with this signal word.

NOTE: Provides additional information to clarify or simplify a procedure.
Electrical equipment should be installed, operated, serviced, and maintained only by qualified personnel. No responsibility is assumed by Schneider Electric for any consequences arising out of the use of this material.

## Before You Begin

## A DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRIC SHOCK, EXPLOSION, OR ARC FLASH

- Apply appropriate personal protective equipment (PPE) and follow safe electrical work practices. See NFPA 70E.
- This equipment must only be installed and serviced by qualified electrical personnel.
- Turn off all power supplying this equipment before working on or inside equipment.
- Always use a properly rated voltage sensing device to confirm power is off.
- Replace all devices, doors, and covers before turning on power to this equipment.
Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.


## A DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRIC SHOCK, EXPLOSION, OR ARC FLASH

- Read and understand this bulletin in its entirety before installing or operating M-Flex controllers. Installation, adjustment, repair, and maintenance of the controllers must be performed by qualified personnel.
- User is responsible for conforming to all applicable code requirements with respect to grounding all equipment.
- Many parts in this controller, including printed wiring boards, operate at line voltage. DO NOT TOUCH. Use only electrically insulated tools.
- DO NOT short across DC bus capacitors or touch unshielded components or terminal strip screw connections with voltage present.
- Before servicing the controller:
- Disconnect all power including external control power that may be present before servicing the controller.
- Place a "DO NOT TURN ON" label on the controller disconnect.
- Lock the disconnect in open position.
- WAIT 15 MINUTES for the DC bus capacitors to discharge. Then follow the DC bus voltage measurement procedure on page 61 to verify that the DC voltage is less than 42 V . The controller LEDs are not accurate indicators of the absence of DC bus voltage.
- Install and close all covers before applying power or starting and stopping the controller.
Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.


## Section 1—Introduction and Technical Characteristics

## Introduction

The M-Flex ${ }^{\text {TM }}$ enclosed controller is targeted for industrial, municipal, and high end commercial applications. See Table 1 for available enclosures and short-circuit current ratings. All controllers are UL 508C Listed with selectable control and power configurations.

This instruction bulletin covers receiving, installation, start-up, configuration, operation, and troubleshooting of the M-Flex AC controllers listed in Table 1.

Table 1: M-Flex AC Controller Enclosures and Short-Circuit Current Ratings

| Controllers |  | Enclosure Type(s) | Short-Circuit Current Rating |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  | Standard | Optional (with Option 610) |
| Constant torque (CT) | 1-40 hp, 208/230 V | 1, 12/12K | 100 kA | - |
|  | 1-75 hp, 460 V | 1, 12/12K | 100 kA | - |
|  | 100-250 hp, 460 V | 1, 1G | 100 kA | - |
|  | 300-450 hp, 460 V | 1, 1G | 65 kA | 100 kA |
| Variable torque (VT) | 1-50 hp, 208/230 V | 1, 12/12K | 100 kA | - |
|  | $1-100 \mathrm{hp}, 460 \mathrm{~V}$ | 1, 12/12K | 100 kA | - |
|  | 125-500 hp, 460 V | 1, 1G | 100 kA | - |
|  | 300-500 hp, 460 V | 1, 1G | 65 kA | 100 kA |

NOTE: $1 \mathrm{G}=$ Type 1 enclosure with gaskets and fan filters

## Related Documentation

For further information, refer to the latest revision of the instruction bulletins listed in Tables 2 and 3. These documents ship with the controller when the corresponding option is selected and are available from the Technical Library at www.schneider-electric.com.

Table 2: Instruction Bulletins

| Bulletin No. | Title |
| :--- | :--- |
| 1755843 (CT) or 1760643 (VT) | Installation Manual, 0.5-60 hp, 230 V and $0-100 \mathrm{hp}, 460 \mathrm{~V}$ |
| 1755849 (CT) or 1760655 (VT) | Installation Manual, 75-100 hp, 230 V and $125-700 \mathrm{hp}, 460 \mathrm{~V}$ |
| 1755855 (CT) or 1760649 (VT) | Programming Manual |
| 1755861 (CT) or 1760661 (VT) | Communication Parameters |
| W817574030111 (CD) | Altivar ${ }^{\mathrm{TM}} 61$ |
| W817555430114 (CD) | Altivar 71 |
| $30072-200-50$ | Handling, Installation, Operation, and Maintenance of Electrical <br> Control Equipment |

Table 3: Option Card Bulletins

| Bulletin No. | Title | Option |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\begin{aligned} & \hline 1755869 \\ & 30072-451-27 \\ & 30072-451-43 \end{aligned}$ | Modbus Plus Card, VW3A3302 <br> Supplementary Instructions for ATV71 Option Cards Addendum to ATV71 Modbus Plus Card VW3A3302 | A09 |
| $\begin{aligned} & \hline 1755867 \\ & 30072-451-27 \end{aligned}$ | Modbus/Uni-Telway ${ }^{\text {TM }}$ Card, VW3A3303 Supplementary Instructions for ATV71 Option Cards | B09 |
| 1754480 | Option Card (Metasys ${ }^{\circledR}$ N2 Card, VW3A3318) | C09 |
| AAV69931 | Ethernet Modbus TCP/IP Card, VW3A3310D | D09 |
| 1765273 | Option Card (LonWorks ${ }^{\circledR}$ Card, VW3A3312) | E09 |
| $\begin{aligned} & \hline 1755877 \\ & 30072-451-27 \\ & 30072-451-44 \end{aligned}$ | DeviceNet ${ }^{\text {TM }}$ Card, VW3A3309 <br> Supplementary Instructions for ATV71 Option Cards Addendum to ATV71 DeviceNet ${ }^{\text {TM }}$ Card | F09 |
| $\begin{aligned} & \hline 1755873 \\ & 30072-451-27 \\ & 30072-451-45 \end{aligned}$ | Profibus DP Card, VW3A3307 <br> Supplementary Instructions for ATV71 Option Cards Addendum to ATV71 Profibus ${ }^{\text {TM }}$ DP VW3A3307 | G09 |
| - | I/O Extension Card, VW3A3202: Refer to the Installation Manual. See Table 2 on page 9. | H09 |
| BBV10543 | Option Card (Apogee P1 Card, VW3A3314) | J09 |
| 1765274 | Option Card (BACnet Card, VW3A3319) | K09 |
| $\begin{aligned} & \hline 1755871 \\ & 30072-451-27 \end{aligned}$ | Interbus Card, VW3A3304 Supplementary Instructions for ATV71 Option Cards | L09 |
| $\begin{aligned} & \hline 1755883 \\ & 30072-451-27 \end{aligned}$ | Standard Fipio Card, VW3A3311 <br> Supplementary Instructions for ATV71 Option Cards | M09 |
| 1629225 | Bluetooth ${ }^{\circledR}$ USB, VW3A8115 | O09 or Q09 |
| 30072-451-39 | Modbus ${ }^{\circledR}$ Bluetooth ${ }^{\circledR}$, VW3A8114 | P09 or Q09 |

All controllers include factory-supplied user drawings and are identified by a factory order number. The factory order number for the controller is referenced in Figure 1 on page 11. This same number appears as part of the number sequence in the title block of the factory-supplied user drawings. The drawing set includes:

- an enclosure outline drawing
- a power elementary drawing
- a control elementary drawing
- an interconnection drawing
- a component layout drawing (1-100 hp VT / 1-75 hp CT @ 460 V ; 1-50 hp VT / 1-40 hp CT @ 208/230 V)


## Terminology

The following terminology is used throughout this instruction bulletin in reference to the M-Flex controller family.

- Enclosed drive, or controller refers to the combination of the power converter, enclosure, and the power and control circuits that constitute the M-Flex Adjustable Speed Enclosed Drive.
- Drive, as used in this manual, refers to the controller portion of the adjustable speed drive as per the NEC.
- Power converter refers to the ATV61 or ATV71 series controllers when used as a component in the M-Flex enclosed drive.


## Precautions

## A DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRIC SHOCK, EXPLOSION, OR ARC FLASH
Turn off all power supplying this equipment before working on it.
Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

Follow these precautions when installing M-Flex controllers:

- The Type 1 and 1G controllers are suitable for installation in a Pollution Degree 2 environment as defined in NEMA ICS1 and IEC 60664-1. The Type 12/12K controller is suitable for installation in a Pollution Degree 3 environment as defined in NEMA ICS1 and IEC 60664-1. The expected environment must be compatible with this rating.
- When attaching wall- and floor-mounted controllers to their mounting surfaces, use fasteners rated for the weight of the apparatus, the expected shock and vibration of the installation, and the expected environment.
- Provide sufficient cooling to maintain a maximum $40^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(104^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$ ambient temperature in accordance with the total dissipated power specified in Tables 25-27 on pages 30-31.
- For seismic qualified products (Mod H10), follow the mounting precautions stated on the safety labels attached to the device.


## Controller Nameplate

 IdentificationThe nameplate for the M-Flex controller is located on the inside of the door. This nameplate, described in Figure 1, identifies the controller Class, Type, and modification (options) listing. When identifying or describing M-Flex controllers, use the data from this nameplate.

Figure 1: Information Provided by the Controller Nameplate


Controller Catalog Numbers
The controller catalog number, located on the nameplate on the inside of the door, is coded to describe the configuration and options present. Use the grid on pages 12-13 to translate the catalog number into a description of the controller.

(3) Enclosure Type

| Code | Environment Rating |
| :--- | :--- |
| A | Type 12/12K: 1-100 hp VT; 1-75 hp CT |
| G | Type 1 |
| B | Type 1G: 125-500 hp VT; 100-450 hp CT |

(4) Voltage Rating

| Code | Voltage |
| :--- | :--- |
| 2 | 208 V |
| 3 | 230 V |
| 4 | 460 V |

(5) Application Type

| Code | Applied Rating |
| :--- | :--- |
| V | Variable Torque |
| C | Constant Torque |

(6) Device Type

| Code | Power Circuit |
| :--- | :--- |
| $R{ }^{[31]}$ | Barriered Bypass—RVAT |
| $S^{[31]}$ | Barriered Bypass—SSRVS |
| $\mathrm{T}^{[31]}$ | Isolation and Transfer |
| $\mathrm{W}[1]$ | Drive Only |
| $\mathrm{Y}[2]$ | Integrated Bypass |
| $\mathrm{Z}^{[2]}$ | Barriered Bypass—Full Voltage |
| Refer to Power Circuits-General beginning on page 92 for definitions. |  |

[17] Select only one option card.
[18] Must use option F07 for control.
[19] Line contactor is not standard with bypass. It can be selected if bypass is also selected. Without bypass option B10, requires order engineering.
[20] C10 is not compatible with C07, D07, or J10.
[21] User must buy separate device to program the controller.
[22] Smoke purge relay E10 permits the motor to run at full speed.
[23] J10 is not compatible with C07, D07, or C10.
[24] Available only when pilot lights are selected.
[25] Not available on power on light.
[26] Not available without bypass.
[27] Not available with option B07, C07, or D07.
[28] With options U10 and V10 you must select option F10.
[29] Supplied with illuminated reset push button.
[30] Not available with 1, 2, or 3 hp controllers.
[31] Requires Order Engineering.
(7) Control Option [3]

| Code | AFC Controls | Code | AFC Controls |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| A07 [4],[5] | Hand/Off/Auto, Speed Potentiometer | D07 [7] | Stop/Start, Forward/Reverse, Speed Potentiometer |
| B07 [4] | Hand/Off/Auto, Start/Stop, Speed Potentiometer | E07 [4] | Hand/Off/Auto, Local/Remote, Speed Potentiometer |
| C07[6], [7] | Start/Stop, Speed Potentiometer | F07 [8] | Communication/Auto/Off/Hand, Speed Potentiometer |
|  |  | N07 [31] | Wired for Remote Operation |

(8) Light Option [9]

| Code | Light Cluster | Code | Light Cluster | Code | Light Cluster |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| A08 [10] | Red Power On | C08 [7], [13] | Red Power On | E08 [15] | Red Power On |
|  | Green AFC Run |  | Green AFC Run |  | Green AFC Run |
|  | Yellow AFC Trip |  |  |  | Yellow AFC Trip |
|  | Yellow Auto |  | Yellow AFC Trip |  | Blue Hand |
|  |  |  |  |  | Yellow Auto |
| B08 [11], [12], [10] | Red Power On | D08 [7], [14] | Red Power On | F08 [16] | Red Power On |
|  | Green AFC Run |  | Yellow AFC Trip |  | Green AFC Run |
|  | Yellow AFC Trip |  | Green Run Forward |  | Yellow AFC Trip |
|  | Yellow Bypass |  | Green Run Reverse |  | Yellow Communication |

(9) Option Cards [17]

| Code | Feature | Code | Feature |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| A09 [18] | Modbus ${ }^{\text {TM }}$ Plus | J09 [18] | Apogee P1 (ATV61 only) |
| B09 [18] | Modbus / Uni-Telway | K09 [18] | BACnet (ATV61 only) |
| C09 [18] | Metasys N2 (ATV61 only) | L09 [18] | Interbus |
| D09 [18] | Ethernet TCP/IP | M09 [18] | Fipio™ |
| E09 [18] | LONWORKS (ATV61 only) | O09 | Bluetooth USB |
| F09 [18] | DeviceNet | P09 | Bluetooth Modbus |
| G09 [18] | Profibus | Bluetooth USB and Modbus |  |
| H09 | I/O extension card: adds 2 analog output, 4 logic inputs, <br> 2 logic output, and 1 differential analog input | Q09 |  |

(10) Miscellaneous Options

| Code | Feature | Code | Feature |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| A10 | Line Reactor nominal 5\% impedance | P10 [13] | AFC Trip Reset |
| B10 [1], [19] | Line Contactor | Q10 [24], [25] | Push-To-Test Pilot Lights |
| C10 [20] | 3-15 psi Transducer | R10 [26], [27] | Auto Transfer to Bypass |
| D10 [21] | Omit Graphic Display Terminal | S10 | Motor Elapsed Time Meter |
| E10 [22] | Smoke Purge Relay | T10 [10] | Emergency Stop |
| F10 [28] | Additional Control Power VA | U10 [28] | Motor Space Heater Sequencing |
| G10 | cUL Listing | V10 [28] | Seal Water Solenoid |
| H10 | Seismic Qualified | W10 [29] | Check Valve Sequencing |
| I10 | Permanent Wire Marker Sleeves | X10 | I.D. Engraved Nameplate |
| J10 [23] | 0-10 Vdc Auto Speed Reference | Y10 [30] | Harmonic Filter Provisions |
| K10 | Additional N.O. Auxiliary Drive Run Contact | Z10 | 24 Vdc Power Supply |
| L10 | Additional N.C. Auxiliary Drive Trip Contact | 310 | Order Engineered (internal use only) |
| M10 11] | 1 N.O. Auxiliary Bypass Run Contact | 410 | RFI Suppressor |
| O10 [10], [15] | 1 N.O. Auxiliary Auto Mode Contact | 610 | 100 AIC Option for VT 300-450 hp and |

## Technical Characteristics

## M-Flex Controller Ratings

## Notes to Tables 4 and 5:

1. "•" can be "A" or "G". "A" denotes a Type 12/12K enclosure; "G" denotes a Type 1 enclosure.
" $\nabla$ " can be " $G$ " or " B ". " $G$ " denotes a Type 1 enclosure; " $B$ " denotes a Type 1G enclosure.
"_" indicates that the catalog number continues. See pages 12 and 13 for a detailed description of catalog numbers.
2. Power shown is for the carrier switching frequency shown. For a switching frequency above factory settings, select the next largest size controller. If the duty cycle does not exceed $60 \%$ ( 36 s maximum for a 60 s cycle) this is not necessary.
3. Continuous output current is based on NEC2005 table 430.250. The M-Flex controller nameplate rating conforms to the NEC table, not the current value listed in the ATV61 or ATV71 instruction manual.
4. The first three characters of the power converter catalog number may be ATV, signifying an IP20 rating, or HTV, signifying an IP00 rating.

NOTE: The drive reduces the switching frequency automatically in the event of excessive heatsink temperature.

Table 4: $\quad$ Constant Torque, 460 V
(Switching Frequency: 1-75 hp @ 4 kHz; 100-450 hp @ 2 kHz)

| Controller Catalog Number [1] | Motor Power [2] 460 V, 60 Hz (hp) | Max. Continuous Output Current (A) [3] | Max. Transient Output Current, 60 s (A) | Power Converter Catalog Number [4] |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| MFDC•4C_ | 1 | 2.1 | 3.2 | ATV71H075N4 |
| MFDD•4C_ | 2 | 3.4 | 5.1 | ATV71HU15N4 |
| MFDE•4C_ | 3 | 4.8 | 7.2 | ATV71HU22N4 |
| MFDF•4C_ | 5 | 7.6 | 11.4 | ATV71HU40N4 |
| MFDG•4C_ | 7.5 | 11 | 16.5 | ATV71HU55N4 |
| MFDH•4C_ | 10 | 14 | 21 | ATV71HU75N4 |
| MFDJ•4C_ | 15 | 21 | 31.5 | ATV71HD11N4 |
| MFDK•4C_ | 20 | 27 | 40.5 | ATV71HD15N4 |
| MFDL•4C_ | 25 | 34 | 51 | ATV71HD18N4 |
| MFDM•4C_ | 30 | 40 | 60 | ATV71HD22N4 |
| MFDN•4C_ | 40 | 52 | 78 | ATV71HD30N4 |
| MFDP•4C_ | 50 | 65 | 97.5 | ATV71HD37N4 |
| MFDQ•4C_ | 60 | 77 | 115.5 | ATV71HD45N4 |
| MFDR•4C_ | 75 | 96 | 144 | ATV71HD55N4 |
| MFDS*4C_ | 100 | 124 | 186 | ATV71HD75N4 |
| MFDT-4C_ | 125 | 156 | 234 | ATV71HD90N4 |
| MFDUマ4C_ | 150 | 180 | 270 | ATV71HC11N4 |
| MFDW*4C_ | 200 | 240 | 360 | ATV71HC13N4 |
| MFDX-4C_ | 250 | 302 | 453 | ATV71HC16N4 |
| MFDY•4C_ | 300 | 361 | 541.5 | ATV71HC20N4 |
| MFDZ-4C_ | 350 | 414 | 621 | ATV71HC25N4 |
| MFD4-4C_ | 400 | 477 | 715.5 | ATV71HC25N4 |
| MFD5*4C_ | 450 | 515 | 772.5 | ATV71HC28N4 |

Table 5: $\quad$ Variable Torque, 460 V
(Switching Frequency: 1-100 hp @ 8 kHz; 125-500 hp @ 2 kHz)

| Controller Catalog Number [1] | Motor Power [2] 460 V, 60 Hz (hp) | Max. Continuous Output Current (A) [3] | Max. Transient Output Current, 60 s (A) | Power Converter Catalog Number [4] |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| MFDC.4V_ | 1 | 2.1 | 2.3 | ATV61H075N4 |
| MFDD•4V_ | 2 | 3.4 | 3.7 | ATV61HU15N4 |
| MFDE•4V_ | 3 | 4.8 | 5.3 | ATV61HU15N4 |
| MFDF.4V_ | 5 | 7.6 | 8.4 | ATV61HU30N4 |
| MFDG•4V_ | 7.5 | 11 | 12.1 | ATV61HU40N4 |
| MFDH•4V_ | 10 | 14 | 15.4 | ATV61HU55N4 |
| MFDJ•4V_ | 15 | 21 | 23.1 | ATV61HU75N4 |
| MFDK•4V_ | 20 | 27 | 29.7 | ATV61HD11N4 |
| MFDL•4V_ | 25 | 34 | 37.4 | ATV61HD15N4 |
| MFDM•4V_ | 30 | 40 | 44.0 | ATV61HD18N4 |
| MFDN•4V_ | 40 | 52 | 57.2 | ATV61HD22N4 |
| MFDP•4V_ | 50 | 65 | 71.5 | ATV61HD30N4 |
| MFDQ $4 \mathrm{~V}_{-}$ | 60 | 77 | 84.7 | ATV61HD37N4 |
| MFDR•4V_ | 75 | 96 | 105.6 | ATV61HD45N4 |

Table 5: Variable Torque, 460 V (continued)
(Switching Frequency: 1-100 hp @ 8 kHz; 125-500 hp @ 2 kHz)

| Controller Catalog Number [1] | Motor Power [2] 460 V, 60 Hz (hp) | Max. Continuous Output Current (A) [3] | Max. Transient Output Current, 60 s (A) | Power Converter Catalog Number [4] |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| MFDS 4 V _ | 100 | 124 | 136.4 | ATV61HD55N4 |
| MFDT*4V_ | 125 | 156 | 172 | ATV61HD75N4 |
| MFDUv4V_ | 150 | 180 | 198 | ATV61HC11N4 |
| MFDW*4V_ | 200 | 240 | 264 | ATV61HC13N4 |
| MFDXV4V_ | 250 | 302 | 332 | ATV61HC16N4 |
| MFDY*4V_ | 300 | 361 | 397 | ATV61HC22N4 |
| MFDZv4V | 350 | 414 | 455 | ATV61HC22N4 |
| MFD4*4V_ | 400 | 477 | 525 | ATV61HC25N4 |
| MFD5*4V_ | 450 | 515 | 567 | ATV61HC31N4 |
| MFD6*4V_ | 500 | 590 | 649 | ATV61HC31N4 |

Table 6: Constant Torque 230 V (Switching Frequency: $\mathbf{4}$ kHz)

Notes to Tables 6 and 7:

1. "•" can be "A" or " $G$ ". " $A$ " denotes a

Type 12/12K enclosure; " $G$ " denotes a Type
1 enclosure.
" " indicates that the catalog number continues. See pages 12 and 13 for a detailed description of catalog numbers.
2. Power shown is for the carrier switching frequency shown. For a switching frequency above factory settings, select the next largest size controller. If the duty cycle does not exceed $60 \%$ ( 36 s maximum for a 60 s cycle) this is not necessary.
3. Continuous output current is based on NEC2005 table 430.250. The M-Flex controller nameplate rating conforms to the NEC table, not the current value listed in the ATV61 or ATV71 instruction manual.
4. The first three characters of the power converter catalog number may be ATV, signifying an IP20 rating, or HTV, signifying an IP00 rating.

| Controller Catalog Number [1] | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Motor Power [2] } \\ & 230 \text { V, } 60 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & \text { (hp) } \end{aligned}$ | Max. Continuous Output Current (A) [3] | Max. Transient Output Current, 60 s (A) | Power Converter Catalog Number [4] |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| MFDC.3C_ | 1 | 4.2 | 6.3 | ATV71H075M3 |
| MFDD•3C_ | 2 | 6.8 | 10.2 | ATV71HU15M3 |
| MFDE•3C_ | 3 | 9.6 | 14.4 | ATV71HU22M3 |
| MFDF.3C_ | 5 | 15.2 | 22.8 | ATV71HU40M3 |
| MFDG•3C_ | 7.5 | 22 | 33 | ATV71HU55M3 |
| MFDH•3C_ | 10 | 28 | 42 | ATV71HU75M3 |
| MFDJ•3C_ | 15 | 42 | 63 | ATV71HD11M3X |
| MFDK•3C_ | 20 | 54 | 81 | ATV71HD15M3X |
| MFDL•3C_ | 25 | 68 | 102 | ATV71HD18M3X |
| MFDM•3C_ | 30 | 80 | 120 | ATV71HD22M3X |
| MFDN•3C_ | 40 | 104 | 156 | ATV71HD30M3X |

Table 7: Variable Torque 230 V (Switching Frequency: $\mathbf{8} \mathbf{~ k H z ) ~}$

| Controller Catalog Number [1] | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Motor Power [2] } \\ & 230 \mathrm{~V}, 60 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & \text { (hp) } \end{aligned}$ | Max. Continuous Output Current (A) [3] | Max. Transient Output Current, 60 s (A) | Power Converter Catalog Number [4] |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| MFDC.3V_ | 1 | 4.2 | 4.6 | ATV61H075M3 |
| MFDD.3V_ | 2 | 6.8 | 7.5 | ATV61HU15M3 |
| MFDE•3V_ | 3 | 9.6 | 10.5 | ATV61HU15M3 |
| MFDF.3V_ | 5 | 15.2 | 16.7 | ATV61HU30M3 |
| MFDG•3V_ | 7.5 | 22 | 24.2 | ATV61HU40M3 |
| MFDH.3V_ | 10 | 28 | 30.8 | ATV61HU55M3 |
| MFDJ•3V_ | 15 | 42 | 46.2 | ATV61HU75M3 |
| MFDK.3V_ | 20 | 54 | 59.4 | ATV61HD11M3X |
| MFDL•3V_ | 25 | 68 | 74.8 | ATV61HD15M3X |
| MFDM•3V_ | 30 | 80 | 88 | ATV61HD18M3X |
| MFDN•3V_ | 40 | 104 | 114.4 | ATV61HD22M3X |
| MFDP.3V_ | 50 | 130 | 143 | ATV61HD30M3X |

## Notes to Tables 8 and 9:

1. "•" can be "A" or " $G$ ". " $A$ " denotes a Type 12/12K enclosure; "G" denotes a Type 1 enclosure
"_" indicates that the catalog number continues. See pages 12 and 13 for a detailed description of catalog numbers.
2. Power shown is for the carrier switching frequency shown. For a switching frequency above factory settings, select the next largest size controller. If the duty cycle does not exceed $60 \%$ ( 36 s maximum for a 60 s cycle) this is not necessary.
3. Continuous output current is based on NEC table 430.250. The M-Flex controller nameplate rating conforms to the NEC table, not the current value listed in the ATV61 or ATV71 instruction manual
4. The first three characters of the power converter catalog number may be ATV, signifying an IP20 rating, or HTV, signifying an IP00 rating.

Table 8: Constant Torque 208 V (Switching Frequency: 4 kHz)

| Controller <br> Catalog Number [1] | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Motor Power [2] } \\ & 208 \mathrm{~V}, 60 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & (\mathrm{hp}) \end{aligned}$ | Max. Continuous Output Current (A) [3] | Max. Transient Output Current, 60 s (A) | Power Converter Catalog Number [4] |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| MFDC.2C_ | 1 | 4.6 | 6.9 | ATV71H075M3 |
| MFDD•2C_ | 2 | 7.5 | 11.3 | ATV71HU15M3 |
| MFDE.2C_ | 3 | 10.6 | 15.9 | ATV71HU22M3 |
| MFDF.2C_ | 5 | 16.7 | 25.1 | ATV71HU40M3 |
| MFDG.2C_ | 7.5 | 24.2 | 36.3 | ATV71HU55M3 |
| MFDH.2C_ | 10 | 30.8 | 46.2 | ATV71HU75M3 |
| MFDJ.2C_ | 15 | 46.2 | 69.3 | ATV71HD11M3X |
| MFDK.2C_ | 20 | 59.4 | 89.1 | ATV71HD15M3X |
| MFDL•2C_ | 25 | 74.8 | 112.2 | ATV71HD18M3X |
| MFDM•2C- | 30 | 88.0 | 132 | ATV71HD22M3X |
| MFDN•2C_ | 40 | 114 | 171 | ATV71HD30M3X |

Table 9: Variable Torque 208 V (Switching Frequency: 8 kHz)

| Controller Catalog Number [1] | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Motor Power [2] } \\ & 208 \text { V, } 60 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & \text { (hp) } \end{aligned}$ | Max. Continuous Output Current (A) [3] | Max. Transient Output Current, 60 s (A) | Power Converter Catalog Number [4] |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| MFDC•2V_ | 1 | 4.6 | 5.1 | ATV61H075M3 |
| MFDD•2V_ | 2 | 7.5 | 8.3 | ATV61HU15M3 |
| MFDE•2V_ | 3 | 10.6 | 11.7 | ATV61HU15M3 |
| MFDF•2V_ | 5 | 16.7 | 18.4 | ATV61HU30M3 |
| MFDG•2V_ | 7.5 | 24.2 | 26.6 | ATV61HU40M3 |
| MFDH•2V_ | 10 | 30.8 | 33.9 | ATV61HU55M3 |
| MFDJ•2V_ | 15 | 46.2 | 50.8 | ATV61HU75M3 |
| MFDK•2V_ | 20 | 59.4 | 65.3 | ATV61HD11M3X |
| MFDL•2V_ | 25 | 74.8 | 82.3 | ATV61HD15M3X |
| MFDM•2V_ | 30 | 88 | 96.8 | ATV61HD18M3X |
| MFDN•2V_ | 40 | 114 | 125.4 | ATV61HD22M3X |
| MFDP•2V_ | 50 | 143 | 157.3 | ATV61HD30M3X |

## Input Current Ratings

All branch circuit components and equipment such as feeder cables, disconnect devices, and protective devices must be rated for the higher of the following two currents: the input current of the controller, or the motor full load current (MFLC). The input current and MFLC are printed on the nameplate (see Figure 1 on page 11). The branch circuit feeder protection must be sized according to the NEC.

Line reactors are used to add reactance to the branch circuit, minimize controller input line current, reduce controller nuisance tripping due to transient overvoltage, reduce harmonic distortion, and help improve controller immunity to voltage imbalance. The supplied line reactors have an impedance of $3 \%$. A $5 \%$ line reactor is available as Mod A10.

In systems that use bypass contactors, the line reactor must only be connected between the breaker load terminals in the controller and the power converter. A line reactor in a bypass motor starting circuit will reduce the motor's ability to produce starting torque.

Table 10: Short-Circuit Current Ratings

| Range (hp) | Minimum UL (kA) | High Trip UL (kA) |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $1-50$ | 5 | 100 |
| $51-200$ | 10 | 100 |
| $201-400$ | 18 | 100 |
| $450-500$ | 30 | 100 |

Table 11: Input Line Currents for Selection of Branch Circuit Feeders for 1-75 hp, $460 \mathrm{~V}, \mathrm{CT}$ [1]

| Controller Catalog Number [2] | Motor Power 460 V 60 Hz (hp) | Rated <br> Output <br> Current | Short-Circuit Current Rating |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  | 5,000 A |  | 10,000 A |  | 22,000 A |  | 100,000 A |  |
|  |  |  | 3\% reactor standard | 5\% reactor option | 3\% reactor standard | 5\% reactor option | 3\% reactor standard | 5\% reactor option | 3\% reactor standard | 5\% reactor option |
| MFDC•4C_ | 1 | 2.1 | 1.5 | 1.5 | 1.5 | 1.5 | 1.5 | 1.5 | 1.5 | 1.5 |
| MFDD•4C_ | 2 | 3.4 | 2.9 | 2.9 | 2.9 | 2.9 | 2.9 | 2.9 | 2.9 | 2.9 |
| MFDE•4C_ | 3 | 4.8 | 3.9 | 3.9 | 3.9 | 3.9 | 3.9 | 3.9 | 3.9 | 3.9 |
| MFDF•4C_ | 5 | 7.6 | 6.8 | 6.9 | 6.8 | 6.8 | 6.9 | 6.9 | 6.9 | 6.9 |
| MFDG•4C_ | 7.5 | 11 | 9.2 | 9.2 | 9.2 | 9.2 | 9.2 | 9.2 | 9.2 | 9.2 |
| MFDH•4C_ | 10 | 14 | 12.5 | 12.5 | 12.5 | 12.4 | 12.5 | 12.4 | 12.5 | 12.4 |
| MFDJ•4C_ | 15 | 21 | 17.5 | 17.5 | 17.5 | 17.5 | 17.5 | 17.5 | 17.6 | 17.5 |
| MFDK•4C_ | 20 | 27 | 23.6 | 23.5 | 23.6 | 23.5 | 23.6 | 23.5 | 23.6 | 23.4 |
| MFDL•4C_ | 25 | 34 | 28.5 | 28.4 | 28.4 | 28.4 | 28.5 | 28.4 | 28.5 | 28.4 |
| MFDM•4C_ | 30 | 40 | 33.5 | 33.4 | 33.4 | 33.4 | 33.4 | 33.4 | 33.4 | 33.4 |
| MFDN•4C_ | 40 | 52 | 45.5 | 45.4 | 45.4 | 45.4 | 45.4 | 45.3 | 45.4 | 45.2 |
| MFDP•4C_ | 50 | 65 | 55.7 | 55.7 | 55.8 | 55.7 | 55.8 | 55.7 | 55.9 | 55.7 |
| MFDQ•4C_ | 60 | 77 | 67.5 | 67.5 | 67.6 | 67.5 | 67.6 | 67.5 | 67.6 | 67.4 |
| MFDR•4C_ | 75 | 96 | 82.1 | 82.1 | 82.2 | 82.1 | 82.2 | 82.1 | 82.3 | 82.1 |

. Input line currents are based on the source impedance capable of providing the listed amperage levels.
2. "•" can be "A" or "G". "A" denotes a Type 12/12K enclosure; "G" denotes a Type 1 enclosure.
"_" indicates that the catalog number continues. See pages 12 and 13 for a detailed description of catalog numbers.
Table 12: Input Line Currents for Selection of Branch Circuit Feeders for 100-450 hp, 460 V, CT [1]

| Controller Catalog Number [2] | Motor Power 460 V 60 Hz (hp) | Rated Output Current | Short-Circuit Current Rating |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  | 65,000 A |  | 100,000 A |  |
|  |  |  | 3\% reactor standard | 5\% reactor option | 3\% reactor standard | 5\% reactor option |
| MFDS*4C_ | 100 | 124 | 111.8 | 111.7 | 111.9 | 111.8 |
| MFDT-4C_ | 125 | 156 | 131.9 | 131.7 | 132.0 | 131.8 |
| MFDU-4C_ | 150 | 180 | 161.3 | 161.1 | 161.4 | 161.2 |
| MFDW*4C_ | 200 | 240 | 192.7 | 192.6 | 192.8 | 192.7 |
| MFDX-4C_ | 250 | 302 | 233.5 | 233.5 | 232.8 | 233.7 |
| MFDY-4C_ | 300 | 361 | 288.9 | 288.7 | 289.1 | 288.9 |
| MFDZv4C_ | 350 | 414 | 317.2 | 317.1 | 317.2 | 317.1 |
| MFD4-4C_ | 400 | 477 | 360.6 | 360.5 | 360.6 | 360.5 |
| MFD5*4C_ | 450 | 515 | 402.7 | 402.6 | 403.1 | 402.8 |

[^0]Table 13: Input Line Currents for Selection of Branch Circuit Feeders for 1-100 hp, 460 V, VT [1]

| Controller Catalog Number [2] | $\begin{gathered} \text { Motor } \\ \text { Power } \\ 460 \text { V } \\ 60 \mathrm{~Hz}(\mathrm{hp}) \end{gathered}$ | Rated <br> Output <br> Current | Short-Circuit Current Rating |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  | 5,000 A |  | 10,000 A |  | 22,000 A |  | 100,000 A |  |
|  |  |  | 3\% reactor standard | 5\% reactor option | 3\% reactor standard | 5\% reactor option | 3\% reactor standard | 5\% reactor option | $3 \%$ reactor standard | 5\% reactor option |
| MFDC•4V_ | 1 | 2.1 | 1.5 | 1.5 | 1.5 | 1.5 | 1.5 | 1.4 | 1.5 | 1.4 |
| MFDD•4V_ | 2 | 3.4 | 2.9 | 2.7 | 2.9 | 2.7 | 2.9 | 2.7 | 2.9 | 2.7 |
| MFDE•4V_ | 3 | 4.8 | 4.0 | 3.8 | 4.0 | 3.8 | 4.0 | 3.8 | 4.8 | 3.8 |
| MFDF•4V_ | 5 | 7.6 | 6.9 | 6.6 | 6.9 | 6.6 | 6.9 | 6.6 | 6.9 | 6.6 |
| MFDG•4V_ | 7.5 | 11 | 9.2 | 8.8 | 9.2 | 8.8 | 9.2 | 8.8 | 9.2 | 8.8 |
| MFDH•4V_ | 10 | 14 | 12.5 | 11.8 | 12.5 | 11.8 | 12.5 | 11.8 | 12.5 | 11.8 |
| MFDJ•4V_ | 15 | 21 | 17.5 | 16.8 | 17.5 | 16.8 | 17.6 | 16.8 | 17.6 | 16.8 |
| MFDK•4V_ | 20 | 27 | 23.5 | 22.4 | 23.5 | 22.4 | 23.6 | 22.4 | 23.7 | 22.4 |
| MFDL•4V_ | 25 | 34 | 28.8 | 27.9 | 28.9 | 27.9 | 29.0 | 27.9 | 29.1 | 27.8 |
| MFDM•4V_ | 30 | 40 | 33.5 | 33.1 | 33.6 | 33.1 | 33.7 | 33.1 | 33.7 | 33.1 |
| MFDN•4V_ | 40 | 52 | 45.1 | 44.7 | 45.2 | 44.7 | 45.3 | 44.7 | 45.3 | 44.6 |
| MFDP•4V_ | 50 | 65 | 55.5 | 54.7 | 55.5 | 54.7 | 55.6 | 54.7 | 55.7 | 54.6 |
| MFDQ $4 \mathrm{~V}_{-}$ | 60 | 77 | 67.3 | 66.8 | 67.4 | 66.9 | 67.4 | 66.9 | 67.4 | 66.8 |
| MFDR•4V_ | 75 | 96 | 82.1 | 81.4 | 82.3 | 81.5 | 82.4 | 81.5 | 82.6 | 81.4 |
| MFDS•4V_ | 100 | 124 | 111.0 | 109.8 | 111.1 | 109.9 | 111.2 | 109.9 | 111.3 | 109.8 |

1. Input line currents are based on the source impedance capable of providing the listed amperage levels.
2. "•" can be "A" or " $G$ ". " $A$ " denotes a Type $12 / 12 \mathrm{~K}$ enclosure; " $G$ " denotes a Type 1 enclosure.
"_" indicates that the catalog number continues. See pages 12 and 13 for a detailed description of catalog numbers.

Table 14: Input Line Currents for Selection of Branch Circuit Feeders for 125-500 hp, 460 V, VT [1]

| Controller Catalog Number [2] | Motor Power 460 V 60 Hz (hp) | Rated Output Current | Short-Circuit Current Rating |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  | 65,000 A |  | 100,000 A |  |
|  |  |  | 3\% reactor standard | 5\% reactor option | 3\% reactor standard | 5\% reactor option |
| MFDTv4V_ | 125 | 156 | 134.2 | 132.5 | 134.2 | 132.4 |
| MFDU-4V_ | 150 | 180 | 160.4 | 160.4 | 160.3 | 160.3 |
| MFDWv4V_ | 200 | 240 | 192.1 | 192.1 | 192.1 | 192.1 |
| MFDX ${ }_{\text {dV_ }}$ | 250 | 302 | 231.9 | 231.9 | 231.7 | 231.7 |
| MFDY-4V_ | 300 | 361 | 309.3 | 309.3 | 309.0 | 309.0 |
| MFDZv4V_ | 350 | 414 | 316.7 | 316.7 | 317.1 | 317.1 |
| MFD4*4V_ | 400 | 477 | 359.2 | 359.2 | 358.6 | 358.6 |
| MFD5*4V_ | 450 | 515 | 402.2 | 402.2 | 401.6 | 401.6 |
| MFD6*4V_ | 500 | 590 | 451.1 | 451.1 | 450.5 | 450.5 |

1. Input line currents are based on the source impedance capable of providing the listed amperage levels.
2. " $\nabla$ " can be " $G$ " or " $B$ ". " $G$ " denotes a Type 1 enclosure; " $B$ " denotes a Type $1 G$ enclosure.
"_" indicates that the catalog number continues. See pages 12 and 13 for a detailed description of catalog numbers.

Table 15: Input Line Currents for Selection of Branch Circuit Feeders for 230 V, CT ${ }^{[1]}$

| Controller Catalog Number [2] | $\begin{gathered} \text { Motor } \\ \text { Power } \\ 230 \mathrm{~V} \\ 60 \mathrm{~Hz}(\mathrm{hp}) \end{gathered}$ | Rated <br> Output <br> Current | Short-Circuit Current Rating |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  | 5,000 A |  | 10,000 A |  | 22,000 A |  | 100,000 A |  |
|  |  |  | 3\% reactor standard | 5\% reactor option | 3\% reactor standard | 5\% reactor option | 3\% reactor standard | 5\% reactor option | 3\% reactor standard | 5\% reactor option |
| MFDC.3C_ | 1 | 4.2 | 3.2 | 3.2 | 3.2 | 3.2 | 3.2 | 3.2 | 3.2 | 3.2 |
| MFDD•3C_ | 2 | 6.8 | 6.0 | 6.0 | 6.0 | 6.0 | 6.0 | 6.0 | 6.0 | 6.0 |
| MFDE•3C_ | 3 | 9.6 | 8.3 | 8.3 | 8.3 | 8.3 | 8.3 | 8.3 | 8.3 | 8.3 |
| MFDF•3C_ | 5 | 15.2 | 14.3 | 14.3 | 14.3 | 14.3 | 14.3 | 14.3 | 14.3 | 14.3 |
| MFDG•3C_ | 7.5 | 22 | 19.5 | 19.4 | 19.5 | 19.4 | 19.4 | 19.4 | 19.5 | 19.5 |
| MFDH•3C_ | 10 | 28 | 25.6 | 25.5 | 25.6 | 25.5 | 25.7 | 25.5 | 25.8 | 25.6 |
| MFDJ•3C_ | 15 | 42 | 35.4 | 35.2 | 35.4 | 35.2 | 35.8 | 35.5 | 35.9 | 35.7 |
| MFDK•3C_ | 20 | 54 | 47.4 | 47.3 | 47.4 | 47.3 | 47.8 | 47.6 | 47.8 | 47.7 |
| MFDL•3C_ | 25 | 68 | 58.6 | 58.4 | 58.6 | 58.4 | 58.9 | 58.8 | 59.0 | 58.9 |
| MFDM•3C_ | 30 | 80 | 69.4 | 69.2 | 69.4 | 69.2 | 69.5 | 69.4 | 69.5 | 69.5 |
| MFDN•3C_ | 40 | 104 | 94.5 | 94.2 | 94.5 | 94.2 | 94.6 | 94.6 | 94.6 | 94.6 |

1. Input line currents are based on the source impedance capable of providing the listed amperage levels.
2. "•" can be " $A$ " or " $G$ ". " $A$ " denotes a Type $12 / 12 \mathrm{~K}$ enclosure; " $G$ " denotes a Type 1 enclosure.
"_" indicates that the catalog number continues. See pages 12 and 13 for a detailed description of catalog numbers.

Table 16: Input Line Currents for Selection of Branch Circuit Feeders for 230 V, VT ${ }^{[1]}$

| Controller Catalog Number [2] | $\begin{gathered} \text { Motor } \\ \text { Power } \\ 230 \text { V } \\ 60 \mathrm{~Hz}(\mathrm{hp}) \end{gathered}$ | Rated <br> Output <br> Current | Short-Circuit Current Rating |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  | 5,000 A |  | 10,000 A |  | 22,000 A |  | 100,000 A |  |
|  |  |  | 3\% reactor standard | 5\% reactor option | 3\% reactor standard | 5\% reactor option | 3\% reactor standard | 5\% reactor option | $3 \%$ reactor standard | 5\% reactor option |
| MFDC•3V_ | 1 | 4.2 | 3.2 | 3.0 | 3.2 | 3.0 | 3.2 | 3.0 | 3.2 | 3.0 |
| MFDD•3V_ | 2 | 6.8 | 6.0 | 5.6 | 6.0 | 5.6 | 6.0 | 5.6 | 6.0 | 5.6 |
| MFDE•3V_ | 3 | 9.6 | 8.3 | 8.0 | 8.3 | 8.0 | 8.4 | 8.0 | 8.4 | 8.0 |
| MFDF•3V_ | 5 | 15.2 | 14.3 | 13.7 | 14.3 | 13.8 | 14.3 | 13.8 | 14.3 | 13.8 |
| MFDG•3V_ | 7.5 | 22 | 19.5 | 18.4 | 19.5 | 18.4 | 19.5 | 18.4 | 19.5 | 18.4 |
| MFDH•3V_ | 10 | 28 | 25.6 | 24.4 | 25.6 | 24.6 | 25.8 | 24.6 | 25.8 | 24.6 |
| MFDJ•3V_ | 15 | 42 | 36.4 | 35.0 | 36.4 | 35.0 | 36.5 | 35.0 | 36.6 | 35.0 |
| MFDK•3V_ | 20 | 54 | 47.4 | 46.2 | 47.4 | 46.4 | 47.5 | 46.4 | 47.6 | 46.3 |
| MFDL•3V_ | 25 | 68 | 59.6 | 58.0 | 59.7 | 58.0 | 59.7 | 58.0 | 59.7 | 57.9 |
| MFDM•3V_ | 30 | 80 | 69.7 | 68.8 | 69.7 | 68.9 | 69.7 | 68.9 | 69.7 | 68.9 |
| MFDN•3V_ | 40 | 104 | 94.2 | 93.5 | 94.2 | 93.6 | 94.2 | 93.6 | 93.9 | 93.4 |
| MFDP•3V_ | 50 | 130 | 116.4 | 116.0 | 116.5 | 116.0 | 116.5 | 116.0 | 116.2 | 115.8 |

[^1]Table 17: Input Line Currents for Selection of Branch Circuit Feeders for 208 V, CT [1]

| Controller Catalog <br> Number [2] | $\begin{gathered} \text { Motor } \\ \text { Power } \\ 208 \text { V } \\ 60 \mathrm{~Hz}(\mathrm{hp}) \end{gathered}$ | Rated <br> Output <br> Current | Short-Circuit Current Rating |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  | 5,000 A |  | 10,000 A |  | 22,000 A |  | 100,000 A |  |
|  |  |  | 3\% reactor standard | 5\% reactor option | 3\% reactor standard | 5\% reactor option | $3 \%$ reactor standard | 5\% reactor option | 3\% reactor standard | 5\% reactor option |
| MFDC•2C_ | 1 | 4.6 | 3.4 | 3.4 | 3.4 | 3.4 | 3.4 | 3.4 | 3.4 | 3.4 |
| MFDD•2C_ | 2 | 7.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 |
| MFDE•2C_ | 3 | 10.6 | 9.1 | 9.1 | 9.1 | 9.1 | 9.1 | 9.1 | 9.1 | 9.1 |
| MFDF•2C_ | 5 | 16.7 | 15.7 | 15.7 | 15.7 | 15.7 | 15.7 | 15.6 | 15.7 | 15.6 |
| MFDG•2C_ | 7.5 | 24.2 | 21.1 | 21.1 | 21.2 | 21.2 | 21.2 | 21.2 | 21.2 | 21.2 |
| MFDH•2C_ | 10 | 30.8 | 28.0 | 28.0 | 28.1 | 28.1 | 28.1 | 28.1 | 28.1 | 28.1 |
| MFDJ•2C_ | 15 | 46.2 | 39.3 | 39.3 | 39.4 | 39.3 | 39.4 | 39.3 | 39.4 | 39.3 |
| MFDK•2C_ | 20 | 59.4 | 52.5 | 52.5 | 52.6 | 52.5 | 52.6 | 52.5 | 52.6 | 52.5 |
| MFDL•2C_ | 25 | 74.8 | 65.0 | 65.0 | 65.1 | 65.0 | 65.1 | 65.0 | 65.0 | 65.0 |
| MFDM•2C_ | 30 | 88 | 76.7 | 76.7 | 76.9 | 76.6 | 76.9 | 76.6 | 76.8 | 76.6 |
| MFDN•2C_ | 40 | 114 | 104.3 | 104.3 | 104.5 | 104.5 | 104.5 | 104.5 | 104.6 | 104.5 |

1. Input line currents are based on the source impedance capable of providing the listed amperage levels.
2. "•" can be "A" or " $G$ ". " $A$ " denotes a Type $12 / 12 \mathrm{~K}$ enclosure; " $G$ " denotes a Type 1 enclosure.
"_" indicates that the catalog number continues. See pages 12 and 13 for a detailed description of catalog numbers.

Table 18: Input Line Currents for Selection of Branch Circuit Feeders for 208 V, VT ${ }^{[1]}$

| Controller Catalog <br> Number [2] | Motor <br> Power 208 V $60 \mathrm{~Hz}(\mathrm{hp})$ | Rated <br> Output <br> Current | Short-Circuit Current Rating |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  | 5,000 A |  | 10,000 A |  | 22,000 A |  | 100,000 A |  |
|  |  |  | 3\% reactor standard | 5\% reactor option | 3\% reactor standard | 5\% reactor option | $3 \%$ reactor standard | 5\% reactor option | 3\% reactor standard | $5 \%$ reactor option |
| MFDC•2V_ | 1 | 4.6 | 3.3 | 3.3 | 3.3 | 3.3 | 3.3 | 3.3 | 3.3 | 3.3 |
| MFDD•2V_ | 2 | 7.5 | 6.3 | 6.2 | 6.3 | 6.2 | 6.3 | 6.2 | 6.2 | 6.2 |
| MFDE•2V_ | 3 | 10.6 | 8.5 | 8.8 | 8.5 | 8.8 | 8.6 | 8.8 | 8.7 | 8.8 |
| MFDF•2V_ | 5 | 16.7 | 15.3 | 15.1 | 15.3 | 15.2 | 15.3 | 15.2 | 15.3 | 15.2 |
| MFDG•2V_ | 7.5 | 24.2 | 20.3 | 20.3 | 20.3 | 20.3 | 20.3 | 20.3 | 20.3 | 20.3 |
| MFDH•2V_ | 10 | 30.8 | 27.1 | 27.0 | 27.2 | 27.1 | 27.3 | 27.1 | 27.3 | 27.1 |
| MFDJ•2V_ | 15 | 46.2 | 38.7 | 38.7 | 38.7 | 38.7 | 38.8 | 38.7 | 38.8 | 38.7 |
| MFDK•2V_ | 20 | 59.4 | 50.9 | 51.4 | 50.9 | 51.4 | 50.9 | 51.4 | 51.0 | 51.3 |
| MFDL•2V_ | 25 | 74.8 | 63.5 | 64.1 | 63.5 | 64.2 | 63.6 | 64.2 | 63.6 | 64.1 |
| MFDM•2V_ | 30 | 88 | 75.2 | 76.1 | 75.2 | 76.1 | 75.2 | 76.1 | 76.1 | 76.1 |
| MFDN•2V_ | 40 | 114 | 103.5 | 102.5 | 103.5 | 102.5 | 103.5 | 102.5 | 103.6 | 103.5 |
| MFDP•2V_ | 50 | 143 | 127.3 | 127.4 | 127.3 | 127.4 | 127.4 | 127.5 | 127.7 | 127.0 |

[^2]2. "•" can be "A" or "G". "A" denotes a Type 12/12K enclosure; "G" denotes a Type 1 enclosure.
"_" indicates that the catalog number continues. See pages 12 and 13 for a detailed description of catalog numbers.

## Specifications

## Table 19: Specifications for Controllers

| Input voltage | $460 \mathrm{~V} \pm 10 \%, 230 \mathrm{~V} \pm 10 \%$, $208 \mathrm{~V} \pm 10 \%$, three-phase |
| :---: | :---: |
| Displacement power factor | 98\% through speed range |
| Input frequency | $60 \mathrm{~Hz} \pm 5 \%$ |
| Output voltage | Three-phase output Maximum voltage (RMS) is $\sim 97 \%$ of input voltage (RMS), $\sim 95 \%$ if option A10 is selected. |
| Galvanic isolation | Galvanic isolation between power and control (inputs, outputs, and power supplies) |
| Frequency range of power converter | 0.1 to 500 Hz (factory setting of 60 Hz ) |
| Torque/overtorque | VT: 110\% of nominal motor torque for 60 s CT: $150 \%$ of nominal motor torque for 60 s |
| Current (transient) | VT: $110 \%$ of controller rated current for 60 s CT: $150 \%$ of controller rated current for 60 s |
| Switching frequency | Selectable from 0.5 to 16 kHz . ${ }^{[1]}$ Factory setting: <br> VT: 8 kHz for $208 \mathrm{~V}, 230 \mathrm{~V}$, and 1-100 hp @460 V <br> 2 kHz for $125-500 \mathrm{hp}$ @ 460 V <br> CT:4 kHz (2 kHz for 100-450 hp @460 V) <br> The drive reduces the switching frequency automatically in the event of excessive heatsink temperature. |
| Speed reference | Al1: 0 to +10 V , Impedance $=30 \mathrm{k} \Omega$. Can be used for speed potentiometer, $1-10 \mathrm{k} \Omega$. <br> AI2: Factory setting: 4 to 20 mA . Impedance $=242 \Omega$ (reassignable, $X-Y$ range with graphic display terminal). Factory modification J 10 allows $0-10 \mathrm{Vdc}$ reference signal to Al 2 , $\mathrm{Z}=30 \mathrm{k} \Omega$. |
| Frequency resolution in analog reference | 0.1 for 100 Hz (11 bits) |
| Speed regulation | V/f control: equal to the motor's rated slip. <br> SFVC: $10 \%$ of the motor's rate slip from $20 \%$ to $100 \%$ of nominal motor torque. |
| Efficiency | 97\% at full load typical |
| Reference sample time | $2 \mathrm{~ms} \pm 0.5 \mathrm{~ms}$ |
| Acceleration and deceleration ramps | 0.1 to 999.9 s (definition in 0.1 s increments) |
| Controller protection | - Thermal protection of power converter <br> - Phase loss of AC mains <br> - Circuit breaker rated at 100 kAIC |
| Motor protection | Class 10 electronic overload protection Class 20 electromechanical overload protection with bypass [2] |
| Graphic display terminal | Self diagnostics with trip messages in three languages; also refer to the Programming Manual on the CD supplied with the power converter. [3] |
| Temperature | Storage for all enclosures: -13 to $+149{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\left(-25\right.$ to $\left.+65^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\right)$. Operation: +14 to $+104^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\left(-10\right.$ to $\left.40^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\right)$. For $1-100 \mathrm{hp}$ drives $(208,230 \& 460 \mathrm{~V})$ operating between 40 and $50^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$, derate the current $2 \%$ per ${ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ above $40^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$. For $125-500 \mathrm{hp}(460 \mathrm{~V})$ operating between 40 and $50^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$, derate the current $3.3 \%$ per ${ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ above $40^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$. |
| Humidity | 95\% with no condensation or dripping water, conforming to IEC 60068-2-3. |
| Altitude | $3,300 \mathrm{ft}(1000 \mathrm{~m})$ maximum without derating; derating of the current by $1 \%$ for each additional $330 \mathrm{ft}(100 \mathrm{~m})$, not to exceed 9,900 ft ( 3000 m ) |
| Enclosure | Type 1: all controllers <br> Type 1G: 125-500 hp VT or 100-450 hp CT @ 460 V only <br> Type 12/12K: all except 125-500 hp VT and 100-450 hp CT @ 460 V |
| Pollution degree | Type 1, 1G: Pollution degree 2 per NEMA ICS-1 Annex A and IEC 60664-1 Type 12: Pollution degree 3 per NEMA ICS-1 and IEC17.560664-1 |
| Operational test vibration | Conforming to IEC 60721-3-3-3M3 amplitude 1.5 mm peak to peak from 3 to 13 Hz 1 g from 13 to 200 Hz |
| Transit test to shock | Conforming to National Safe Transit Association and International Safe Transit Association test for packages. |
| Operational shock | $15 \mathrm{~g}, 11 \mathrm{~ms}$ |
| Seismic qualification | 2003 IBC, NFPA 5000, and ASCE 7 <br> ICC ES AC156 acceptance criteria test protocol with an importance factor of 1.5. |
| Codes and standards | UL Listed per UL 508C under category NMMS. Conforms to applicable NEMA ICS standards. Manufactured under ISO 9001 standards. Factory modification G10 provides Canadian cUL certification. |

1. On 1-75 hp CT and 1-100 hp VT controllers, above $4 \mathrm{kHz} \mathrm{CT/8} \mathrm{kHz} \mathrm{VT} ,\mathrm{select} \mathrm{the} \mathrm{next} \mathrm{largest} \mathrm{size} \mathrm{controller}$.

If the duty cycle does not exceed $60 \%$ ( 36 s maximum for a 60 s cycle), this is not necessary.
2. Class 10 electromechanical for $1 \mathrm{hp} @ 460 \mathrm{~V}$.
3. Refer to Table 2 for the instruction bulletin number.

## Standard Features

## Drive Only

## With Bypass

Controllers without bypass are available up to 450 hp CT / 500 hp VT @ 460 V; or 40 hp CT / 50 hp VT @ 208/230 V.

The following are standard for controllers without bypass when no options are ordered:

- Circuit breaker disconnect
- UL Listed per UL 508C
- 65,000 or 100,000 A short-circuit current rating
- Heavy duty industrial disconnect handle with lockout/tag-out provisions
- Hand-Off-Auto selector switch and manual speed potentiometer
- Door-mounted graphic display terminal
- Auto start relay ( 115 -volt control)
- One Form C AFC run mode contact
- One Form C AFC trip contact
- Remote trip condition reset in Auto mode with transition of auto start contact
- Manual trip condition reset in Off position of H-O-A selector switch
- Safety interlock/run permissive wired to user terminal block TB1
- Permanent wire markers
- White component mounting plate
- Conduit knockouts on wall mounted enclosures
- Removable conduit entry plates on floor mount enclosures
- ANSI 49 dark gray enclosure
- Class 10 electronic overload protection

Controllers with bypass are available up to 150 hp CT / 200 hp VT @ 460 V; or 40 hp CT / 50 hp VT @ 208/230 V.

The following are standard for controllers with bypass when no options are ordered:

- Circuit breaker disconnect
- UL Listed per UL 508C
- 65,000 or 100,000 A short-circuit current rating
- Heavy duty industrial disconnect handle with lockout/tag-out provisions
- Hand-Off-Auto selector switch and manual speed potentiometer
- Door-mounted graphic display terminal
- Auto start relay (115-volt control)
- One Form C AFC run mode contact
- One Form C AFC trip contact
- Remote trip condition reset in Auto mode with transition of auto start contact
- Manual trip condition reset in Off position of H-O-A selector switch
- Safety interlock/run permissive wired to user terminal block TB1
- Permanent wire markers
- White component mounting plate
- Conduit knockouts on wall mounted enclosures
- Removable conduit entry plates on floor mount enclosures
- ANSI 49 dark gray enclosure
- Class 20 overload protection with door mounted reset
- AFC-Off-Bypass selector switch
- Test-Normal selector switch
- Isolation and bypass contactors (with mechanical and electrical interlocking)
- Bypass and isolation contactor sequencing for true motor isolation
- Remote automatic bypass operation using Auto Start relay


## Factory Modifications

Power Options

Refer to Tables 20-24 for the list of parts included with each factory modification.

NOTE: Legend plate part numbers beginning with 65170 are not available as a separately-ordered part. Contact your local field sales office.

Table 20: Parts List for Bypass Circuit Selector Switches

| Selector Switch | Part No. | Description |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Test-Normal Selector <br> Switch | ZB5AD2 | Two-position selector switch |
|  | ZB5AZ009 | Mounting collar |
|  | ZBE204 | Additional contact block (2 N.C.) |
|  | ZBE101 | Additional contact block (1 N.O.) |
|  | 65170-166-72 | Engraved legend plate, "Test-Normal" |
|  | ZBZ32 | Legend plate holder |
| AFC-Off-Bypass Selector <br> Switch | ZB5AD3 | Three-position selector switch |
|  | ZB5AZ103 | Mounting collar with contact block (2 N.O.) |
|  | 65170-166-43 | Engraved legend plate "AFC-Off-Bypass" |
|  | ZBZ32 | Legend plate holder |

## Control Options

NOTE: Refer to the notes on pages 12 and 13 for rules governing component selection.

Table 21: Control Options (Required Selection)

| Control Option | Description | Parts List |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| A07 | Hand-Off-Auto Selector Switch | ZB5AD3 Three-position selector switch ZB5AZ009 Mounting collar <br> (2) ZBE205 Contact blocks (1 N.C. and 1 N.O.) 65170-166-17 Hand-Off-Auto legend plate ZBZ32 Legend plate holder |
|  | Speed Potentiometer | ATVPOT25K Speed potentiometer assembly |
| B07 | Hand-Off-Auto Selector Switch | ZB5AD3 Three-position selector switch ZB5AZ009 Mounting collar <br> (2) ZBE205 Contact blocks (1 N.C. and 1 N.O.) 65170-166-17 Hand-Off-Auto legend plate ZBZ32 Legend plate holder |
|  | Stop/Start Push Buttons | ZB5AA2 Black push button ZB5AA4 Red push button ZB5AZ101 Mounting collar w/ contact block (1 N.O.) ZB5AZ102 Mounting collar w/ contact block (1 N.C.) 65170-166-31 Start legend plate 65170-166-09 Stop legend plate <br> (2) ZBZ32 Legend plate holders |
|  | Speed Potentiometer | ATVPOT25K Speed potentiometer assembly |
| C07 | Stop/Start Push Buttons | ZB5AA2 Black push button ZB5AA4 Red push button ZB5AZ101 Mounting collar w/ contact block (1 N.O.) ZB5AZ102 Mounting collar w/ contact block (1 N.C.) 65170-166-31 Start legend plate 65170-166-09 Stop legend plate <br> (2) ZBZ32 Legend plate holders |
|  | Speed Potentiometer | ATVPOT25K Speed potentiometer assembly |
| D07 | Stop/Start Push Buttons | ZB5AA2 Black push button ZB5AA4 Red push button ZB5AZ101 Mounting collar w/ contact block (1 N.O.) ZB5AZ102 Mounting collar w/ contact block (1 N.C.) 65170-166-31 Start legend plate 65170-166-09 Stop legend plate <br> (2) ZBZ32 Legend plate holders |
|  | Forward/Reverse Selector Switch | ZB5AD2 Two-position selector switch <br> ZBE203 Contact block (2 N.O.) <br> ZBE204 Contact block (2 N.C.) <br> ZB5AZ009 Mounting collar <br> 65170-166-45 Forward/Reverse legend plate <br> ZBZ32 Legend plate holder |
|  | Speed Potentiometer | ATVPOT25K Speed potentiometer assembly |
| E07 | Hand-Off-Auto Selector Switch | ZB5AD3 Three-position selector switch ZB5AZ009 Mounting collar <br> (2) ZBE205 Contact blocks (1 N.C. and 1 N.O.) 65170-166-17 Hand-Off-Auto legend plate ZBZ32 Legend plate holder |
|  | Local/Remote Selector Switch | ZB5AD2 Two-position selector switch <br> ZB5AZ101 Mounting collar w/ contact block (1 N.O.) <br> 65170-166-80 Local/Remote legend plate <br> ZBZ32 Legend plate holder |
|  | Speed Potentiometer | ATVPOT25K Speed potentiometer assembly |
| F07 | Communication-Auto-Off-Hand Selector Switch | KAXZ1M12 Operator handle 9003K2H0285USX Contact block assembly 65170-170-41 A-O-H legend plate 31164-098-01 Comms label ZBZ32 Legend plate holder |
|  | Speed Potentiometer | ATVPOT25K Speed potentiometer assembly |

## Light Options

NOTE: Refer to the notes on pages 12 and 13 for rules governing component selection.

## Notes for Table 22:

1. For the push-to-test feature, the following pilot light operators are used:
ZB5AW35 replaces ZB5AV05
ZB5AW33 replaces ZB5AV03
ZB5AW36 replaces ZB5AV06
2. For the push-to-test feature, ZB5AW065 (mounting collar w/ light module and 1 N.O. and 1 N.C. contact) replaces ZB5AV6 (mounting collar w/ light module).

Table 22: Light Options (Optional Selection)

| Light Option | Description | Parts List |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| A08 <br> Pilot Light <br> Cluster <br> Option \#1 | Red <br> Power On | ZB5AV04 Red pilot light head <br> ZB5AV6 Mounting collar with light module 25501-00003 LED <br> 65170-166-24 Power On legend plate ZBZ32 Legend plate holder |
|  | Green AFC Run | ZB5AV03 Green pilot light head [1] <br> ZB5AV6 Mounting collar with light module [2] 25501-00005 LED <br> 65170-166-42 AFC Run legend plate <br> ZBZ32 Legend plate holder |
|  | Yellow <br> Trip | ZB5AV05 Amber pilot light head [1] <br> ZB5AV6 Mounting collar with light module [2] 25501-00004 LED <br> 65170-166-39 Trip legend plate <br> ZBZ32 Legend plate holder |
|  | Yellow <br> Auto | ZB5AV05 Amber pilot light head [1] <br> ZB5AV6 Mounting collar with light module [2] 25501-00004 LED <br> 65170-166-08 Auto legend plate <br> ZBZ32 Legend plate holder |
| B08 <br> Pilot Light Cluster Option \#2 | Red <br> Power On | ZB5AV04 Red pilot light head <br> ZB5AV6 Mounting collar with light module <br> 25501-00003 LED <br> 65170-166-24 Power On legend plate <br> ZBZ32 Legend plate holder |
|  | Green AFC Run | ZB5AV03 Green pilot light head [1] ZB5AV6 Mounting collar with light module [2] 25501-00005 LED <br> 65170-166-42 AFC Run legend plate <br> ZBZ32 Legend plate holder |
|  | Yellow Trip | ZB5AV05 Amber pilot light head [1] ZB5AV6 Mounting collar with light module [2] 25501-00004 LED <br> 65170-166-39 Trip legend plate <br> ZBZ32 Legend plate holder |
|  | Yellow <br> Bypass | ZB5AV05 Amber pilot light head [1] <br> ZB5AV6 Mounting collar with light module [2] 25501-00004 LED <br> 65170-166-37 Bypass legend plate <br> ZBZ32 Legend plate holder |
| C08 <br> Pilot Light <br> Cluster <br> Option \# 3 | Red <br> Power On | ZB5AV04 Red pilot light head <br> ZB5AV6 Mounting collar with light module 25501-00003 LED <br> 65170-166-24 Power On legend plate ZBZ32 Legend plate holder |
|  | Green AFC Run | ZB5AV03 Green pilot light head [1] <br> ZB5AV6 Mounting collar with light module [2] 25501-00005 LED <br> 65170-166-42 AFC Run legend plate <br> ZBZ32 Legend plate holder |
|  | Yellow <br> Trip | ZB5AV05 Amber pilot light head [1] <br> ZB5AV6 Mounting collar with light module [2] 25501-00004 LED <br> 65170-166-39 Trip legend plate <br> ZBZ32 Legend plate holder |

NOTE: Refer to the notes on pages 12 and 13 for rules governing component selection.

## Notes for Table 22:

1. For the push-to-test feature, the following pilot light operators are used:
ZB5AW35 replaces ZB5AV05
ZB5AW33 replaces ZB5AV03
ZB5AW36 replaces ZB5AV06
2. For the push-to-test feature, ZB5AW065 (mounting collar w/ light module and 1 N.O. and 1 N.C. contact) replaces ZB5AV6 (mounting collar w/ light module).

Table 22: Light Options (Optional Selection) (continued)

| Light Option | Description | Parts List |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| D08 <br> Pilot Light Cluster Option \#4 | Red <br> Power On | ZB5AV04 Red pilot light head ZB5AV6 Mounting collar with light module 25501-00003 LED 65170-166-24 Power On legend plate ZBZ32 Legend plate holder |
|  | Yellow <br> Trip | ZB5AV05 Amber pilot light head [1] ZB5AV6 Mounting collar with light module [2] 25501-00004 LED <br> 65170-166-39 Trip legend plate <br> ZBZ32 Legend plate holder |
|  | Green <br> AFC Forward | ZB5AV03 Green pilot light head [1] ZB5AV6 Mounting collar with light module [2] 25501-00005 LED 65170-166-15 Forward legend plate ZBZ32 Legend plate holder |
|  | Green <br> AFC Reverse | ZB5AV03 Green pilot light head [1] ZB5AV6 Mounting collar with light module [2] 25501-00005 LED <br> 65170-166-27 Reverse legend plate <br> ZBZ32 Legend plate holder |
| E08 <br> Pilot Light Cluster Option \#5 | Red <br> Power On | ZB5AV04 Red pilot light head ZB5AV6 Mounting collar with light module 25501-00003 LED 65170-166-24 Power On legend plate ZBZ32 Legend plate holder |
|  | Green AFC Run | ZB5AV03 Green pilot light head [1] ZB5AV6 Mounting collar with light module [2] 25501-00005 LED <br> 65170-166-42 AFC legend plate <br> ZBZ32 Legend plate holder |
|  | Yellow <br> Trip | ZB5AV05 Amber pilot light head [1] <br> ZB5AV6 Mounting collar with light module [2] 25501-00004 LED <br> 65170-166-39 Trip legend plate <br> ZBZ32 Legend plate holder |
|  | Blue <br> Hand | ZB5AV06 blue pilot light head [1] ZB5AV6 Mounting collar with light module [2] 25501-00006 LED 65170-166-16 Hand legend plate ZBZ32 Legend plate holder |
|  | Yellow <br> Auto | ZB5AV05 Amber pilot light head [1] ZB5AV6 Mounting collar with light module [2] 25501-00004 LED <br> 65170-166-08 Auto legend plate <br> ZBZ32 Legend plate holder |
| F08 <br> Pilot Light Cluster Option \#6 | Red <br> Power On | ZB5AV04 Red pilot light head ZB5AV6 Mounting collar with light module 25501-00003 LED <br> 65170-166-24 Power On legend plate ZBZ32 Legend plate holder |
|  | Green AFC Run | ZB5AV03 Green pilot light head [1] ZB5AV6 Mounting collar with light module [2] 25501-00005 LED <br> 65170-166-42 AFC Run legend plate <br> ZBZ32 Legend plate holder |
|  | Yellow <br> Trip | ZB5AV05 Amber pilot light head ZB5AV6 Mounting collar with light module 25501-00004 LED 65170-166-39 Trip legend plate ZBZ32 Legend plate holder |
|  | Yellow Communication | ZB5AV05 Amber pilot light head ZB5AV6 Mounting collar with light module 25501-00004 LED 65170-170-39 Communication legend plate ZBZ32 Legend plate holder |

## Option Cards

NOTE: Refer to the notes on pages 12 and 13 for rules governing component selection.

Notes for Table 23:

1. PowerSuite ${ }^{\text {TM }}$ software is required for configuring the power converter. Options pending availability.

These cards must be programmed by the customer.
Table 23: Option Cards (Optional Selection)

| Card Option | Name | Description | Connector |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| A09 | Modbus Plus | Factory-installed plug-in Modbus Plus card VW3A3302. | Equipped with one 9-pin female SUB-D connector |
| B09 | Modbus/Uni-Telway Serial Communication | Factory-installed plug-in Modbus card VW3A3303. | Equipped with one 9-pin female SUB-D connector |
| C09 | Metasys ${ }^{\circledR}$ N2 Serial Communication | Factory-installed plug-in Metasys N2 card VW3A3318. | Equipped with one 9-pin female SUB-D connector |
| D09 | Ethernet | Factory-installed plug-in Ethernet card VW3A3310D with RJ45 connector port. | Equipped with one RJ45 connector |
| E09 | LonWorks Serial Communication | Factory-installed LonWorks card VW3A3312. | Equipped with one removable 3-way screw connector |
| F09 | DeviceNet | Factory-installed plug-in DeviceNet card VW3A3309 and user terminal block TB5. | Equipped with one removable screw connector |
| G09 | Profibus | Factory-installed Profibus card VW3A3307. | Equipped with one 9-pin female SUB-D connector |
| H09 | 1/O Extension Card | Factory-installed I/O extension card VW3A3202. Adds 2 analog output, 4 logic inputs, 2 logic output, and 1 differential analog input. | - |
| J09 | Apogee P1 | Factory-installed P1 card VW3A3314. | Equipped with one 9-pin female SUB-D connector |
| K09 | BACnet | Factory-installed BACnet card VW3A3319. | Equipped with one 9-pin female SUB-D connector |
| L09 | Interbus | Factory-installed Interbus card VW3A3304. | Equipped with one 9-pin male SUB-D connector and one 9-pin female SUB-D connector |
| M09 | Fipio | Factory-installed Fipio card VW3A3311. | Equipped with one 9-pin male SUB-D connector |
| O09 [1] | Bluetooth USB | Factory-supplied Bluetooth USB device VW3A8115. | - |
| P09 [1] | Bluetooth Modbus | Factory-supplied Bluetooth Modbus adapter VW3A8114. | - |
| Q09 [1] | Bluetooth USB and Modbus | Factory-supplied Bluetooth USB device VW3A8115 and Modbus adapter VW3A8114. | - |

## Miscellaneous Options

NOTE: Refer to the notes on pages 12 and 13 for rules governing component selection.

## Notes for Table 24:

1. One N.O. and one N.C. Form C Drive Run contact is provided as standard on the user terminal block.
2. One N.O. and one N.C. Form C Drive Trip contact is provided as standard on the user terminal block.
3. If the motor space heater (U10) and seal water solenoid (V10) are both required, additional control power VA (F10) is also supplied.
4. See pages 64-67 to locate terminal blocks TB1 and TB2.


## Total Dissipated Watts Loss

## Note for Table 25：

1．＂•＂can be＂$A$＂，or＂$G$＂．＂$A$＂denotes a Type $12 / 12 \mathrm{~K}$ enclosure；＂$G$＂denotes a Type 1 enclosure．
＂ $\boldsymbol{\nabla}$＂can be＂$G$＂or＂$B$＂．＂$G$＂denotes a Type 1 enclosure；＂$B$＂ denotes a Type 1 G enclosure．
＂$\vee$＂can be＂ C ＂or＂ V ＂．＂ C ＂denotes a constant torque controller；＂$V$＂denotes a variable torque controller．＂$\quad$＂ indicates that the catalog number continues．See pages 12 and 13 for a detailed description of catalog numbers．

Table 24：Miscellaneous Options（Optional Selection）（continued）

| Misc． <br> Option | Name | Description |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $\mathbf{4 1 0}$ | RFI Suppressor | Provides radio frequency interference suppression with ferrites <br> on the power leads to the controller input． |
| $\mathbf{6 1 0}$ | 100 kAIC | Increase the AIC rating from 65 kA to 100 kA for VT 300－450 <br> hp and CT 300－500 hp |

The total dissipated watts loss in Tables 25－27 is provided for sizing the environment HVAC cooling requirements based upon worst－case operating conditions for Type 1 and Type 12／12K enclosures．

Table 25：Maximum Total Dissipated Watts Loss， 460 V

| Controller Catalog No．［1］ | Constant Torque |  | Variable Torque |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | hp | Total Dissipated Watts Loss | hp | Total Dissipated Watts Loss |
| MFDC•4○ | 1 | 307 | 1 | 285 |
| MFDD•4॰ | 2 | 337 | 2 | 317 |
| MFDE•4○ | 3 | 367 | 3 | 345 |
| MFDF•4ゝ | 5 | 450 | 5 | 420 |
| MFDG•4ゝ | 7.5 | 546 | 7.5 | 510 |
| MFDH•4○＿ | 10 | 541 | 10 | 498 |
| MFDJ•4ゝ | 15 | 708 | 15 | 606 |
| MFDK•4○＿ | 20 | 827 | 20 | 743 |
| MFDL•4仓 | 25 | 960 | 25 | 872 |
| MFDM•4ゝ | 30 | 1187 | 30 | 955 |
| MFDN•4ゝ | 40 | 1529 | 40 | 1232 |
| MFDP•4ゝ | 50 | 1751 | 50 | 1562 |
| MFDQ•4ゝ | 60 | 2048 | 60 | 1841 |
|  | 75 | 2230 | 75 | 2022 |
| MFDS•4仓 | 100 | 2434 | 100 | 2375 |
| MFDT ${ }^{\text {4 }}{ }^{\text {® }}$ | 125 | 3029 | 125 | 3026 |
| MFDUマ4介＿ | 150 | 3056 | 150 | 3103 |
| MFDW＊4合 | 200 | 3745 | 200 | 3756 |
| MFDX 4 $^{\text {¢ }}$ | 250 | 5081 | 250 | 5107 |
| MFDY『4合 | 300 | 5554 | 300 | 5560 |
| MFDZv4合 | 350 | 7005 | 350 | 7006 |
|  | 400 | 8103 | 400 | 8103 |
| MFD5－4合 | 450 | 8248 | 450 | 8251 |
| MFD6『4® | － | － | 500 | 8628 |

Note for Tables 26 and 27：
1．＂•＂can be＂$A$＂or＂$G$＂．＂$A$＂denotes a Type 12／12K enclosure；＂$G$＂denotes a Type 1 enclosure．
＂$\rangle$＂can be＂$C$＂or＂$V$＂．＂$C$＂denotes a constant torque controller；＂V＂denotes a variable torque controller．
＂＿＂indicates that the catalog number continues．See pages 12 and 13 for a detailed description of catalog numbers．

Table 26：Maximum Total Dissipated Watts Loss， 230 V

| Controller Catalog No．［1］ | Constant Torque |  | Variable Torque |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | hp | Total Dissipated Watts Loss | hp | Total Dissipated Watts Loss |
| MFDC．3尔 | 1 | 338 | 1 | 305 |
| MFDD•3尔 | 2 | 386 | 2 | 351 |
|  | 3 | 424 | 3 | 403 |
| MFDF．30 | 5 | 503 | 5 | 466 |
| MFDG•3号 | 7.5 | 627 | 7.5 | 525 |
| MFDH．30 | 10 | 742 | 10 | 671 |
| MFDJ•3合 | 15 | 1026 | 15 | 821 |
| MFDK•3浐 | 20 | 1113 | 20 | 1053 |
| MFDL•3㐌 | 25 | 1346 | 25 | 1186 |
| MFDM•3॰＿ | 30 | 1388 | 30 | 1307 |
| MFDN•30 | 40 | 1784 | 40 | 1500 |
| MFDP•30 | － | － | 50 | 1899 |

Table 27：Maximum Total Dissipated Watts Loss， 208 V

| Controller Catalog No．［1］ | Constant Torque |  | Variable Torque |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | hp | Total Dissipated Watts Loss | hp | Total Dissipated Watts Loss |
| MFDC．20 | 1 | 342 | 1 | 309 |
| MFDD•2过 | 2 | 388 | 2 | 353 |
|  | 3 | 429 | 3 | 408 |
| MFDF．2介＿ | 5 | 511 | 5 | 473 |
| MFDG•2过 | 7.5 | 640 | 7.5 | 538 |
|  | 10 | 761 | 10 | 690 |
| MFDJ•2ゝ＿ | 15 | 1052 | 15 | 847 |
|  | 20 | 1144 | 20 | 1085 |
| MFDL $2 \wedge_{-}$ | 25 | 1397 | 25 | 1230 |
| MFDM•20 | 30 | 1424 | 30 | 1344 |
| MFDN•2过 | 40 | 1849 | 40 | 1566 |
| MFDP． $2 \wedge_{-}$ | － | － | 50 | 1930 |

## Mounting Dimensions

Dimensions provided are for devices with or without bypass, unless otherwise specified.

Figure 2: Size C Enclosure: 1-5 hp CT/VT Controllers @ 208/230 V; 1-20 hp CT and 1-25 hp VT Controllers @ $\mathbf{4 6 0}$ V (Drawing 80471-215-00)


Figure 3: Size D Enclosure: 7.5-10 hp CT/VT Controllers @ 208/230 V (Drawing 80471-215-00)


Figure 4: Size E Enclosure: 15-20 hp CT and 15-25 hp VT Controllers @ 208/230 V; 25-40 hp CT and 30-50 hp VT Controllers @ 460 V (Drawing 80471-216-00)


NOTE: Remove plenum fan filter, front grill, and retaining bracket

NOTE: Provide at least 36 in . of mounting clearance in front of the drive and at least 24 in . of mounting clearance at the top of the drive. Floor mounted units may be mounted side by side

NOTE: Remove the top or bottom conduit plates as necessary to facilitate the appropriate conduit entry. Ensure that the plates are

Figure 5: $\quad$ Size F Enclosure: 25-40 hp CT and 30-50 hp VT Controllers @ 208/230 V; 50-75 hp CT and 60-100 hp VT Controllers @ 460 V (Drawing 80471-219-00)


DIMENSIONS IN INCHES (mm)


NOTE: Remove plenum fan filter, front grill, and retaining bracket assembly to access the mounting hole locations.

NOTE: Provide at least 36 in. of mounting clearance in front of the drive and at least 24 in. of mounting clearance at the top of the drive. Floor mounted units may be mounted side by side without clearance.

NOTE: Remove the top or bottom conduit plates as necessary to facilitate the appropriate conduit entry. Ensure that the plates are replaced after installing the conduit hubs.


Figure 6: Size C/D Barriered Enclosure: 1-10 hp CT/VT Controllers @ 208/230 V; 1-20 hp CT and 1-25 hp VT Controllers @ 460 V (Drawing 80471-217-00)

NOTE: Remove plenum fan filter, front grill, and retaining bracket assembly to access the mounting hole locations.
NOTE: Provide at least 36 in. of mounting clearance in front of the drive and at least 24 in. of mounting clearance at the top of the drive. Floor mounted units may be mounted side by side without clearance.

NOTE: Remove the top or bottom conduit plates as necessary to facilitate the appropriate conduit entry. Ensure that the plates are replaced after installing the conduit hubs.


Figure 7: Size E Barriered Enclosure: 15-20 hp CT and 15-25 hp VT Controllers @ 208/230 V; 25-40 hp CT and 30-50 hp VT Controllers @ 460 V (Drawing 80471-217-00)

NOTE: Remove plenum fan filter, front grill, and retaining bracket assembly to access the mounting hole locations.
NOTE: Provide at least 36 in. of mounting clearance in front of the drive and at least 24 in. of mounting clearance at the top of the drive. Floor mounted units may be mounted side by side without clearance.

NOTE: Remove the top or bottom conduit plates as necessary to facilitate the appropriate conduit entry. Ensure that the plates are replaced after installing the conduit hubs.


Figure 8: $\quad$ Size F Barriered Enclosure: 25-40 hp CT and 30-50 hp VT Controllers @ 208/230 V; 50-75 hp CT and 60-100 hp VT Controllers @ 460 V (Drawing 80471-218-00)

NOTE: Remove plenum fan filter, front grill, and retaining bracket assembly to access the mounting hole locations.

NOTE: Provide at least 36 in. of mounting clearance in front of the drive and at least 24 in. of mounting clearance at the top of the drive. Floor mounted units may be mounted side by side without clearance.

NOTE: Remove the top or bottom conduit plates as necessary to facilitate the appropriate conduit entry. Ensure that the plates are replaced after installing the conduit hubs.


Figure 9: Size H Enclosure: 100 hp CT and 125 hp VT Controllers @ 460 V with Drive Only (Drawing 80444-870-00)

NOTE: Provide at least 36 in . of mounting clearance in front of the drive and at least 24 in. of mounting clearance at the top of the drive. Floor mounted units may be mounted side by side without clearance.
NOTE: Remove the top or bottom conduit plates as necessary to facilitate the appropriate conduit entry. Ensure that the plates are replaced after installing the conduit hubs.


LEFT SIDE VIEW


DIMENSIONS IN INCHES (mm)


BOTTOM VIEW

Figure 10: Size I Enclosure: 125-200 hp CT and 150-250 hp VT Controllers @ 460 V with Drive Only (Drawing 80444-871-00)

NOTE: Provide at least 36 in. of mounting clearance in front of the drive and at least 24 in . of mounting clearance at the top of the drive. Floor mounted units may be mounted side by side without clearance.

NOTE: Remove the top or bottom conduit plates as necessary to facilitate the appropriate conduit entry. Ensure that the plates are replaced after installing the conduit hubs.


LEFT SIDE VIEW



Figure 11: Size J Enclosure: 250-450 hp CT and 300-500 hp VT Controllers @ 460 V with Drive Only (Drawing 80444-872-00)

NOTE: Provide at least 36 in. of mounting clearance in front of the drive and at least 24 in . of mounting clearance at the top of the drive. Floor mounted units may be mounted side by side without clearance.

NOTE: Remove the top or bottom conduit plates as necessary to facilitate the appropriate conduit entry. Ensure that the plates are replaced after installing the conduit hubs.


Figure 12: Size H Integrated Enclosure: 100 hp CT and 125 hp VT Controllers @ 460 V with Integrated Bypass Option (Drawing 80444-870-00)

DIMENSIONS IN INCHES (mm)
NOTE: Provide at least 36 in. of mounting clearance in front of the drive and at least 24 in . of mounting clearance at the top of the drive. Floor mounted units may be mounted side by side without clearance.

NOTE: Remove the top or bottom conduit plates as necessary to facilitate the appropriate conduit entry. Ensure that the plates are replaced after installing the conduit hubs.


Figure 13: Size I Integrated Enclosure: 125-200 hp CT and 150-250 hp VT Controllers @ $\mathbf{4 6 0}$ V with Integrated Bypass Option (Drawing 80444-871-00)

NOTE: Provide at least 36 in. of mounting clearance in front of the drive and at least 24 in . of mounting clearance at the top of the drive. Floor mounted units may be mounted side by side without clearance.

NOTE: Remove the top or bottom conduit plates as necessary to facilitate the appropriate conduit entry. Ensure that the plates are replaced after installing the conduit hubs.


Figure 14: Size H Barriered Enclosure: 100 hp CT and 125 hp VT Controllers @ 460 V with Barriered Bypass Option (Drawing 80444-870-00)

NOTE: Provide at least 36 in . of mounting clearance in front of the drive and at least 24 in. of mounting clearance at the top of the drive. Floor mounted units may be mounted side by side without clearance.

NOTE: Remove the top or bottom conduit plates as necessary to facilitate the appropriate conduit entry. Ensure that the plates are replaced after installing the conduit hubs.


Figure 15: Size I Barriered Enclosure: 125-150 hp CT and 150-200 hp VT Controllers @ $\mathbf{4 6 0}$ V with Barriered Bypass Option (Drawing 80444-871-00)

NOTE: Provide at least 36 in . of mounting clearance in front of the drive and at least 24 in. of mounting clearance at the top of the drive. Floor mounted units may be mounted side by side without clearance.

NOTE: Remove the top or bottom conduit plates as necessary to facilitate the appropriate conduit entry. Ensure that the plates are replaced after installing the conduit hubs.



LEFT SIDE VIEW

CG $=$ CENTER OF GRAVITY
FROM MTG SURFACE


BOTTOM VIEW

Figure 16: $125-200 \mathrm{hp}$ VT and $100-150 \mathrm{hp}$ CT Controllers @ $\mathbf{4 6 0}$ V with Integrated or Barriered Bypass (Conduit Views)

| hp | 460 V | CT | 100 | 125-150 | 100 | 125-150 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | VT | 125 | 150-200 | 125 | 150-200 |
| Weight |  | lb | 1025 | 1175 | 1150 | 1300 |
|  |  | kg | 464.9 | 532.9 | 521.6 | 589.6 |
|  | C | in. | 5.84 | 10.63 | 5.84 | 10.63 |
|  |  | mm | 148.3 | 270.0 | 148.3 | 270.0 |
|  | D | in. | 25 | 30 | 25 | 30 |
|  |  | mm | 635 | 762 | 635 | 762 |
|  | E | in. | 22.2 | 27.2 | 22.2 | 27.2 |
|  |  | mm | 563.8 | 690.8 | 563.8 | 690.8 |
|  | F | in. | 22.5 | 25.0 | 25.0 | 27.5 |
|  |  | mm | 571.5 | 635 | 635 | 698.5 |
|  | G | in. | 12.5 | 15.0 | 12.5 | 12.5 |
|  |  | mm | 317.5 | 381.0 | 317.5 | 317.5 |
| Enclosure Size |  |  | integrated |  | barriered |  |
|  |  |  | H | 1 | H | I |

NOTE: Provide at least 36 in. of mounting clearance in front of the drive and at least 24 in. of mounting clearance at the top of the drive. Floor mounted units may be mounted side by side without clearance.
NOTE: Remove the top or bottom conduit plates as necessary to facilitate the appropriate conduit entry. Ensure that the plates are replaced after installing the conduit hubs.

Dimensions: in. (mm)
NOTE: Circled numbers indicate depth in inches.
Anchor Mounting Holes



Integrated Bypass Conduit Entry - Bottom View


Barriered Bypass Conduit Entry - Bottom View

## Weights

Table 28: M-Flex Controller Weights

| Controller Rating |  |  |  | Weight <br> lb (kg) ${ }^{[1]}$ | Enclosure Size Reference |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\begin{gathered} 208 / 230 \mathrm{~V} \\ \text { CT } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c} 208 / 230 \mathrm{~V} \\ \text { VT } \end{array}$ | $\begin{gathered} 460 \mathrm{~V} \\ \mathrm{CT} \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} 460 \text { V } \\ \text { VT } \end{gathered}$ |  |  |
| 1-5 | 1-5 | 1-20 | 1-25 | 175 (79.4) | Size C |
| 7.5-10 | 7.5-10 | - | - | 243 (110.2) | Size D |
| 1-10 | 1-10 | 1-20 | 1-25 | 379 (310.3) | Size C/D BB [2] |
| 15-20 | 15-20 | 25-40 | 30-50 | 375 (170.1) | Size E |
|  |  |  |  | 512 (232.2) | Size E BB [2] |
| 25-40 | 30-50 | 50-75 | 60-100 | 548 (248.6) | Size F |
|  |  |  |  | 684 (171.9) | Size F BB [2] |
| - | - | 100 | 125 | 489 (221.8) | Size H |
| - | - |  |  | 1014 (459.9) | Size H w/ integrated bypass. |
| - | - |  |  | 1139 (516.6) | Size H BB [2] |
| - | - | 125-200 | 150-250 | 657 (298.0) | Size I |
| - | - |  |  | 1182 (536.1) | Size I w/ integrated bypass. |
| - | - |  |  | 1307 (592.8) | Size I w/ BB [2] |
| - | - | 250-450 | 300-500 | 969 (439.5) | Size J |

1 The weight supplied is for a typical configuration and may differ for different power options and miscellaneous options selected.
2 BB is an abbreviation for barriered bypass power circuit.

## Section 2—Receiving, Installation, and Start-Up

## Preliminary Inspection

Figure 17: Circuit Breaker Handle Assembly

## 208/230 V; and 1-75 hp CT / 1-100 hp VT @ 460 V



100-450 hp CT / 125-500 hp VT @ 460 V


## ACAUTION <br> DAMAGED EQUIPMENT <br> Do not operate any controller that appears damaged. <br> Failure to follow these instructions can result in injury or equipment damage.

Thoroughly inspect the controller before storing or installing it. Upon receipt:
A. Remove the controller from its packaging and visually inspect the exterior for shipping damage.
B. Ensure that the Class, Type, and option specified on the controller nameplate agree with the packaging slip and corresponding purchase order. Refer to page 11.
C. If you find any shipping damage, notify the carrier and your sales representative.
D. If you plan to store the controller after receipt, replace it in its original packaging material and observe storage temperature and humidity specifications in Table 19 on page 22.

| A CAUTION |
| :--- |
| DAMAGE TO INSULATED PARTS IN AIR DUCT |
| - Protect the air duct at the rear of the enclosure from entry of foreign |
| material. |
| - Do not place loose objects on top of the enclosure. |
| - Do not block air flow from the duct. |
| Failure to follow these instructions can cause breaker trip, resulting |
| in process shutdown or equipment damage. |

## Before installation:

1. Open the controller door by moving the circuit breaker handle assembly to the Off position. Refer to Figure 17.
2. Visually verify that all internal mounting and terminal connection hardware is properly seated, securely fastened, and undamaged.
3. Visually verify that the control board and any communication boards on the power converter are properly seated, securely fastened, and undamaged. Verify that the internal plugs and wiring connections are tight. Inspect all connections for damage.
4. Verify that all relays and fuses are installed and fully seated.
5. Close and secure the controller door, by fully closing all latching means.

## Handling the Controller

Figure 18: Hoisting M-Flex Controllers


## A WARNING

## HANDLING AND LIFTING HAZARD

Keep the area below any equipment being lifted clear of all personnel and property. Use the lifting method shown in Figure 18.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

Some controllers are shipped on a pallet on their back. To avoid damage, do not stack controllers on top of each other. Store the controller in its original packaging until it is at the final installation site. The packaging protects the controller and prevents damage to its exterior.
Handle the controller carefully to avoid damage to the internal components, frame, or exterior. When handling a controller, balance it carefully to keep it from tipping. After removing packaging materials, controllers require some type of mechanical lifting.
When handling controllers:

- Always work with another person. The weight, size, and shape of the controller is such that two people are required to handle it.
- Use gloves.
- Attach a spreader bar to the two top lifting holes on the controller back panel or lifting bracket (see Figures 2-15 on pages 32-45 for location of lifting holes) and hoist the controller with chains or straps. See Figure 18 for the proper hoisting method.
- Raise the controller from a horizontal position (i.e., the back of the controller resting on a pallet).
- Place the controller in an upright position.

NOTE: Wall mounted enclosures will not sit upright without support. The bottom of the wall mounting controller is on an angle.

## A WARNING

## IMPROPER MOUNTING

Before removing the lifting mechanism:

- Ensure that all hardware is of sufficient size and type for the controller weight.
- Secure and tighten all hardware.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

## Installation

## Mechanical Installation

Seismic Qualification Mounting Criteria

Refer to Table 19 beginning on page 22 for specifications.

- Secure all four corners of the controller with hardware of a sufficient size and type for the controller weight.
- For floor-mounted enclosures, these corners are on the base support of the enclosure. For locations see pages 34-46.
- For wall-mounted enclosures, these corners are at the back of the enclosure. For locations see pages 32-33.
- Mount the wall-mounted controller on a flat, noncombustible vertical surface capable of supporting the controller weight.
- Mount the floor-mounted controller on a flat, solid surface capable of supporting the controller weight.
- The floor-mounted controller must be mounted in a location which provides air access into the lower front of the controller.
- For seismic qualified products (Mod H10), follow the mounting precautions stated on the safety labels attached to the device.
- If drilling for conduit entry, exercise care to prevent metal chips from falling on parts and electronic printed wiring boards.
- See Figures 2-16 on pages 32-46 for mounting dimensions, mounting clearances, and conduit entry areas. See Table 28 on page 47 for controller weights.
- Do not mount the controller on hot surfaces.
- Do not mount the controller in direct sunlight.

Seismic qualification (MOD H10) harmonizes the following standards in compliance with ICC ES AC156 acceptance criteria test protocol with an importance factor of 1.5.

- 2003 IBC (International Building Code)
- NFPA 5000 (Building Code - National Fire Protection Agency)
- 2001 CBC (Canadian Building Code)
- 1997 UBC (Uniform Building Code)
- 1999 NBC (BOCA National Building Code)
- 1999 SBC (Standard Building Code)
- ASCE 7 (American Society of Civil Engineers)

For seismic installation compliance, follow the specific labels attached to the controller and refer to Figures 19-24 on pages 52-55 for anchorage, lateral bracing, and mounting guidelines using SAE Grade 5 hardware bolts and washers. These guidelines apply for all wall- and floor-mounted, Type 1, 1G, and $12 / 12 \mathrm{~K}$ constructions.

Figure 19: Seismic Qualification Labels


Danger Label


- Apply appropriate personal protective equipment (PPE) and follow safe electrical work practices. See NFPA 70E
- This equipment must be installed and serviced only by qualified electrical personnel.
- Turn off all power supplying this equipment before working on or inside equipment.
- Always use a properly rated voltage sensing device to confirm power is off.
- Replace all devices, doors, and covers before turning on power to this equipment.
Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

Figure 20: Seismic Qualification Label: Wall Mounting 1-25 hp VT, 1-20 hp CT @ $460 \mathrm{~V} ; 1$ 10 hp VT, 1-10 hp CT @ 208/230 V

Wall Mounting


Figure 21: Seismic Qualification Label: Base Mounting for Floor-Mounted Units
1-100 hp VT, 1-75 hp CT @ 460 V; 1-50 hp VT, 1-40 hp CT @ 208/230 V
Base Mounting Label


- Seismic Anchorage Location


## Seismic Anchorage Requirements

To maintain Seismic Qualification, each individual enclosure must be anchored at the floor locations shown above. For seismic hazard areas with an Ss acceleration value in excess of 2.67 g (New Madrid Seismic Area) each Enclosed Motor Controller must be laterally braced at the top. Refer to the current International Building Code or NFPA 5000 for location specific values of Ss. Use $1 / 2^{\prime \prime}$ or $3 / 4^{\prime \prime}$ grade 5 bolts and the appropriate Flat washers (supplied by others). In order to develop full strength of the anchor, torque bolts to the value specified by the anchor manufacturer
Refer to Instruction Manual 30072-451-52 for installation instructions.

Figure 22: Seismic Qualification Label: Lateral Bracing for Floor-Mounted Units 1-100 hp VT, 1-75 hp CT @ 460 V; 1-50 hp VT, 1-40 hp CT @ 208/230 V

Lateral Bracing


Figure 23: Seismic Qualification Label: Base Mounting for Floor-Mounted Units 125-500 hp VT, 100-450 hp CT @ 460 V

## Base Mounting



Seismic Anchorage Location


## Seismic Anchorage Requirements

To maintain seismic qualification, each individual section must be anchored at the floor locations shown above.
For seismic hazard areas with an Ss acceleration value in excess of 2.67 g (New Madrid Seismic Area) each individual section must be laterally braced at the top. Refer to the current International Building Code or NFPA 5000 for location-specific values of Ss.
Use $1 / 2^{\prime \prime}$ or $3 / 4^{\prime \prime}$ grade 5 bolts (supplied by others) and the appropriate Belleville spring washers (supplied with equipment). In order to develop full strength of the anchor, torque bolts to the value specified by the anchor manufacturer.
Refer to Bulletin number 30072-451-52 for installation instructions.

Figure 24: Seismic Qualification Label: Lateral Bracing for Floor-Mounted Units 125-500 hp VT, 100-450 hp CT @ 460 V

Lateral Bracing


## O Seismic Anchorage Location

## Seismic Anchorage Requirements

For seismic hazard areas with an Ss acceleration value in excess of 2.67 g (New Madrid Seismic Hazard Area) each Enclosed Drive must be laterally braced at the top of each section and connected to the building load bearing structural system. Refer to the current International Building Code or NFPA 5000 for location specific values of Ss.
Remove lifting bracket, after the Enclosed Drive has been installed, and attach lateral brace (supplied by others), re-using bolt and lock washer or user supplied hardware.
Each section must also be anchored at the base (as shown on the instruction label located on the inside of the bottom located horizontal wire-way cover plate).
Refer to Bulletin number 30072-451-52 for installation instructions.

80438-880-06
REV

## Electrical Installation

## General Wiring Practices

## Input Power

## A DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRIC SHOCK, EXPLOSION, OR ARC FLASH

- Turn off all power (main and remote) before installing the equipment.
- Read the hazard statements on page 9 of this manual.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

Before wiring, perform the bus voltage measurement procedure on page 61. Good wiring practice requires the separation of control circuit wiring from all power wiring. Power wiring to the motor must have the maximum possible separation from all other power wiring, whether from the same controller or other controllers. Do not run power and/or control or multiple power wiring in the same conduit. This separation reduces the possibility of coupling electrical transients from power circuits into control circuits or from motor power wiring into other power circuits.

## ACAUTION

## IMPROPER WIRING

Follow the wiring practices described in this document in addition to those already required by the National Electrical Code ${ }^{\circledR}$ and local codes.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in injury or equipment damage.

Follow the practices below when wiring the M-Flex controller:

- Use metallic conduit for all controller wiring. Do not run control and power wiring in the same conduit.
- Separate metallic conduits carrying power wiring or low-level control wiring by at least 3 inches ( 76 mm ).
- Separate existing, non-metallic conduits or cable trays used to carry power wiring from metallic conduit carrying low-level control wiring by at least 12 inches ( 305 mm ).
- Whenever power and control wiring cross, the metallic conduits and non-metallic conduits or trays must cross at right angles.
- Equip all inductive circuits near the controller (relays, contactors, solenoid valves) with noise suppressors, or connect them to a separate circuit.

The M-Flex controller operates from a three-phase, $460 \mathrm{Vac} \pm 10 \%$, $230 \mathrm{Vac} \pm 10 \%$, or $208 \mathrm{Vac} \pm 10 \% 60 \mathrm{~Hz} \pm 5 \%$ supply connected to the input of the controller.

## Branch Circuit Connections

## Grounding

All branch circuit components and equipment such as feeder cables, disconnect devices, and protective devices must be rated for highest current, either the input current of the controller or the MFLC. The input current and MFLC are printed on the nameplate (see Figure 1 on page 11). Refer to Tables 11-18 on pages 18-21 for controller input currents. Refer to Tables 33-39 (pages 69-74) for lug data and wire range for controller input terminals L1, L2, and L3.

- For barriered bypass products, connect input power leads L1, L2, and L3:
- to the labeled distribution block (1-75 hp CT and 1-100 hp VT)
- to the disconnect switch in the bypass section (100-150 hp CT and 125-200 hp VT).
- For all other products, connect input power leads L1, L2, and L3 to the input of the circuit breaker.


## A WARNING

## IMPROPER OVERCURRENT COORDINATION

- Protective devices must be properly coordinated.
- Do not connect the controller to a power feeder whose short circuit capacity exceeds the short circuit rating listed on the controller nameplate.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death or serious injury.

## CAUTION

## IMPROPER WIRING

The controller will be damaged and the warranty voided if input line voltage is applied to the output terminals (T1, T2, T3). Check the power connections before energizing the controller.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in equipment damage.

Ground the controller according to the National Electrical Code and all local codes. To ground the controller:

- Connect a copper wire from the ground bar terminal to the power system ground.
- Verify that the resistance to ground is $1 \Omega$ or less. Improper grounding causes intermittent and unreliable operation.
- Do not remove any internal ground wires or connections.


## A DANGER

## HAZARD OF ELECTRIC SHOCK

- Ground equipment using the provided ground connection point as shown in Figures 26-29 starting on page 64. The controller panel must be properly grounded before power is applied.
- Do not use metallic conduit as a ground conductor.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

Ground multiple controllers as shown in Figure 25. Use one grounding conductor per device. Do not loop ground conductors or install them in series.

Figure 25: Grounding Multiple Controllers


## A WARNING

## LOSS OF CONTROL

- The designer of any control scheme must consider the potential failure modes of control paths and, for certain critical control functions, provide a means to achieve a safe state during and after a path failure. Examples of critical control functions are emergency stop and over travel stop.
- Separate or redundant control paths must be provided for critical control functions.
- System control paths may include communication links. Consideration must be given to the implications of anticipated transmission delays or failures of the link ${ }^{1}$.
- Each implementation of an M-Flex enclosed drive must be individually and thoroughly tested for proper operation before being placed into service.
Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.
1 For additional information, refer to NEMA ICS 1.1 (latest edition), "Safety Guidelines for the Application, Installation, and Maintenance of Solid State Control" and to NEMA ICS 7.1 (latest edition), "Safety Standards for Construction and Guide for Selection, Installation and Operation of Adjustable-Speed Drive Systems."

The high frequency equipotential grounding connection between the drive, motor, and cable shielding does not eliminate the need to connect the grounding (PE) conductors (green-yellow) to the appropriate terminals on each unit. To help accomplish this, follow these guidelines:

- To avoid communication interference, grounds between the drive, motor and cable shields must have high frequency equipotentiality.
- When using shielded cable for the motor, use a 4-conductor cable so that one wire will be the grounding connection between the motor and the drive. Size the grounding conductor in compliance with local and national codes. The shield can then be grounded at both ends. Metal


## Output Wiring

## Output Cable

ducting or conduit can be used for part or all of the shielding length, provided there is no break in continuity.

- When using shielded cable for control signals, if the cable is connecting equipment that is close together and the grounds are bonded together, then both ends of the shield can be grounded. If the cable is connected to equipment that may have a different ground potential, then ground the shield at one end only to prevent large currents from flowing in the shield. The shield on the ungrounded end may be tied to ground with a capacitor (for example: $10 \mathrm{nF}, 100 \mathrm{~V}$ or higher) in order to provide a path for the higher frequency noise.
- Ensure maximum separation between the power supply cable (line supply) and the motor cable and also ensure maximum separation between the control cables and any power cables.

The ampacity of motor power conductors should be sized according to the motor full load current, National Electrical Code, and applicable local codes.

Connect motor conductors to the lugs provided, and connect the motor ground to the ground bar provided.
If the controller is supplied with a bypass circuit, connect the motor conductors to T1, T2, and T3 on the overload relay. If the controller is supplied without a bypass circuit, connect the motor conductors to $\mathrm{T} 1, \mathrm{~T} 2$, and T3 on the power converter distribution block or the converter output terminals U, V, and W. See Figures 26-29 (pages 64-67) for location. Refer to Tables 33-39 (pages 69-74) for lug data and wire range. Refer to the nameplate for torque requirements.
The controller is sensitive to the amount of capacitance (either phase-tophase or phase-to-ground) present on the output power conductors. If excessive capacitance is present, the controller may trip on overcurrent.

Follow the guidelines below when selecting output cable:

- Cable type: the cable selected must have a low capacitance phase-tophase and to ground. Do not use mineral-impregnated cable because it has a very high capacitance. Immersion of cables in water increases capacitance.
- Cable length: the longer the cable, the greater the capacitance. Cable lengths greater than $150 \mathrm{ft}(50 \mathrm{~m})$ may cause ground trips. For installation where cable capacitances may be a problem, a reactor or motor protection filter can be installed between the controller and the motor.
Refer to the guidelines in Table 29 on page 60 for the maximum cable length for typical drive/motor applications. These limits are based on the maximum recommended peak voltage that can be allowed at the motor terminals, due to the reflected wave phenomenon. This increase in voltage is primarily determined by the degree of impedance mismatch between the power conductor and the motor in combination of the $\mathrm{dV} / \mathrm{dt}$
of the specific semiconductors used in the inverter section of the drive feeding the motor, both of which vary by horsepower.

Many variables affect the performance of the drive, motor, and cables in long lead applications. Motor protection filters can provide substantial benefits for:

- 460 V or higher rated AC drives
- Existing general-purpose motors subject to retrofit with an AC drive
- Shielded cables

NEMA MG-1 Part 31 compliant motors are recommended but not required. Consult the motor manufacturer or vendor literature to address any specific limitations governing the application.

- Proximity to other output cables: because of high frequency switching and increased capacitance, the controller may trip under some conditions.
- Do not use lightning arrestors or power factor correction capacitors on the output of the controller.

| ACAUTION |
| :--- |
| INSUFFICIENT OUTPUT INDUCTANCE |
| For proper controller short circuit protection, certain values of inductance |
| may be required in the output power wiring. Inductance can be supplied |
| by the power wiring or auxiliary inductors. |
| Failure to follow these instructions can result in injury or equipment <br> damage. |

A minimum inductance is needed to protect the controller output from short circuits. Provide at least 20 in . ( 508 mm ) of cable at the controller output (T1, T2, and T3).

Table 29: Maximum Cable Length for Standard Duty Motors

| Controller Rating hp @ 480 V | Type of Cable | Approximate length of motor cables, ft (m) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | 20 in . to 164 ft (0.5 to 50 m ) | $\begin{aligned} & 164-328 \\ & (50-100) \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 328-492 \\ & (100-150) \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 492-656 \\ & (150-200) \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 656-984 \\ & (200-300) \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 984-1,312 \\ & (300-400) \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 1,312-1,968 \\ & (400-600) \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 1,968-3,280 \\ & (600-1000) \end{aligned}$ |
| 1-20 CT | Shielded | - | 3\% Load Reactor |  | Motor Protection Filter |  |  |  | Consult your Schneider Electric representative |
| 1-25 VT | Unshielded | - |  | 3\% Load Reactor |  |  | Motor Protection Filter |  |  |
| $\begin{aligned} & 25-100 \mathrm{CT} \\ & 30-125 \mathrm{VT} \end{aligned}$ | Shielded | - |  | 3\% Load Reactor | Motor Protection Filter |  |  |  |  |
|  | Unshielded | - |  |  | 3\% Load Reactor |  | Motor Protection Filter |  |  |
| 125-450 CT | Shielded | - |  | 3\% Load Reactor |  | Motor Protection Filter |  |  |  |
| 150-500 VT | Unshielded | - |  | 3\% Load Reactor |  |  | Motor Protection Filter |  |  |

## DC Bus Voltage Measurement Procedure

## ! DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRIC SHOCK, EXPLOSION, OR ARC FLASH

- Read and understand the bus voltage measurement procedure before performing the procedure. Measurement of bus capacitor voltage must be performed by qualified personnel.
- Many parts in this controller, including printed wiring boards, operate at line voltage. DO NOT TOUCH. Use only electrically-insulated tools.
- DO NOT short across DC bus capacitors or touch unshielded components or terminal strip screw connections with voltage present.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

Refer to Before You Begin on page 8 for additional safety information.
To measure the DC bus capacitor voltage:

1. Observe the lockout/tagout procedures as identified in OSHA Standard 29 CFR, Subpart J covering:

- 1910.147: The control of hazardous energy (lockout/tagout).
- 1910.147: App A, Typical minimal lockout procedures.

2. Open the disconnect between the input line and the controller. Lock the disconnect in the open position and install a "Do Not Turn On" sign. Open the circuit breaker disconnect located on the front of the controller. Also, be sure to remove all external control power that may be present such as on the control board and the option board terminals.
3. Wait fifteen minutes for the DC bus capacitors to discharge.
4. Open the door of the controller.
5. Set a properly rated voltmeter to the 1000 Vdc scale. Measure the voltage between the PA/+ and PC/- terminals. The physical location of these terminals varies by the power converter model number, which is listed on the power converter nameplate.
6. Verify that the DC bus voltage has discharged below 45 V before servicing the controller. If the DC bus capacitors will not discharge below 42 V, contact your local Schneider Electric representative. Do not operate the controller.
7. After servicing the controller, close and secure the door.

## Wire Routing and Interconnection

## Wire Class

## Noise Class

## Voltage Class

The Wire Class describes the compatibility of the field wiring terminal with the conductor material and insulation system. When used in conjunction with the required conductor current rating and controller ambient temperature rating, the Wire Class forms the basis for selecting a conductor size that limits the temperature on the conductor insulation at the field wiring terminal to acceptable limits. Although it is permissible to use conductors with operating temperatures exceeding those given by the Wire Class, conductor size must fall within the Wire Class limits.

The Noise Class categorizes the electromagnetic properties of the voltages and currents present. The Noise Class is comprised of the six categories shown in Table 30.

Table 30: Noise Class Categories

| Noise Class | $\quad$ Definition |
| :--- | :--- |
| Quiet Wiring 1 (QW1) | High susceptibility to analog and digital control signals. Signals <br> falling under this classification include digital <br> communication/network circuits, controller analog I/O and analog <br> process signals. |
| Quiet Wiring 2 (QW2) | Medium susceptibility to analog and digital control signals. Signals <br> falling under this classification include 24 Vdc and Vac control <br> circuits. |
| Standard Wiring 1 (SW1) | Low susceptibility to control or power circuits rated less than 600 <br> Vac (250 Vdc) and less than 15 A (voltage and current spectra are <br> generally contained within 0.05-9 kHz). Signals falling under this <br> classification include 120 Vac control circuits. |
| Standard Wiring 2 (SW2) | Power circuits rated greater than 15 A (voltage and current spectra <br> are generally contained within 0.05-9 kHz). Signals falling under <br> this classification include line power to controllers. |
| Standard Wiring 3 (SW3) | Reserved. |
| Pulse Wiring 1 (PW1) | Control or power circuits whose voltage or current spectra <br> significantly exceed 9 kHz. Signals falling under this classification <br> include motor and dynamic braking circuits fed from pulse width <br> modulation (PWM) power converters. |

The Voltage Class categorizes the voltages present into recognized conductor insulation categories (30,150,300, and 600 V ) for selection of the conductor voltage rating and physical segregation purposes.

## Wiring Methods

Based upon the Noise Class and Voltage Class of the conductors, apply the wiring methods in Table 31 to the controller system.

## Table 31: Wire Routing and Interconnection

| Wiring Methods and Considerations | Noise Class of Conductors |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | QW1 | QW2 | SW1 | SW2 | PW1 |
| Conductor Grouping in Wireways/Conduits <br> 1. All conductors of 1 or 3 phase $A C$ power circuits must be bundled to minimize stray magnetic fields. |  |  | X | X | X |
| 2. All conductors of a DC power circuit must be bundled to minimize stray magnetic fields. |  |  | x | X | X |
| 3. When paralleled conductors must be run in separate wireways or conduit, bundle conductors into groups that minimize stray magnetic fields. |  |  |  | X | X |
| 4. Maintain conductor runs as short and direct as practical. | X | X | X | X | X |
| Separation of Circuits <br> 1. DO NOT run different Noise Class conductors in the same conduit. | X | X | X | X | X |
| 2. DO NOT run different Voltage Class conductors in the same conduit unless all conductors are insulated for the maximum Voltage Class present. | X | X | X | X | X |
| 3. All PW conductor groups must be individually segregated using metallic conduit. |  |  |  |  | X |
| 4. Segregate all conductors by Noise Class. Use the following circuit separation when conductors can run parallel for more than 12 in . ( 305 mm ) |  |  |  |  |  |
| - Metallic conduit: 3 in. ( 76 mm ) between QW to SW/PW | X | X | X | X | X |
| - Metallic tray: 3 in . $(76 \mathrm{~mm}$ ) between SW to PW |  |  | X | X | X |
| - Metallic tray: 6 in . (152 mm ) between QW to SW/PW | x | x | X | X | X |
| - Against continuous metal surface: 3 in. ( 76 mm ) between SW to PW |  |  | X | X | X |
| - Against continuous metal surface: 6 in. ( 152 mm ) between QW to SW/PW | x | X | X | X | X |
| - Metallic conduit housing QW: 12 in. ( 305 mm ) to non-metallic conduit SW/PW | x | X | x | X | X |
| - Non-metallic conduit: 3 in. ( 76 mm ) between SW to PW |  |  | X | X | X |
| - Non-metallic conduit: 24 in . (610 mm) between QW to SW/PW | X | X | X | X | X |
| 5. If QW and SW1 wiring must cross SW2 or PW1 wiring, the bundles must cross at right angles. | X | X | x | x | X |
| Common Mode Noise Issues <br> 1. Provide adjacent signal returns using twisted pair cable. | X | X |  |  |  |
| 2. Galvanically isolate signal and associated signal return path when possible. | X | X |  |  |  |
| Shielding <br> 1. Use metallic conduit for all power and control circuits external to the controller enclosure. | x | X | X | X | X |
| 2. Shields should be continuous and equipped with a drain wire. | X | X | X |  |  |
| 3. DO NOT group different Noise Class conductors within the same shield. | X | X | x | x | x |
| 4. Minimize non-shielded portion of conductor at the ends of shielded cable. | X | X | X | X | X |
| 5. When shielding AC or DC power conductors, group conductors to minimize magnetic field in shield. |  |  | X | X | X |
| Grounding <br> 1. Ground shields only at the controller end. | X | X | X | X | X |
| 2. Use separate ground wire for each shield ground. | x | X | x | X | X |
| 3. Provide a ground wire with all conductor groups whether in tray or conduit. |  |  | X | X | X |
| 4. When multiple grounds must be made to a shielded power cable, the shield must have the same short circuit withstand capability as the ground conductor in the power cable. |  |  | X | X | X |
| 5. Terminate all power grounds and power shield grounds to the controller grounding point or bar. |  |  | X | X | X |
| 6. Terminate all signal shield grounds to the terminals provided. | X | X |  |  |  |
| 7. Always supply a separate equipment grounding conductor with the controller power feed. DO NOT depend upon metallic conduit for ground connection. |  |  | X | X | X |

## Component Identification and Terminal Strip Locations

Figures 26-29 show component identification and terminal strip locations for M-Flex controllers. Refer to Tables 33-39 (pages 69-74) for wire range and terminal torque requirements.

Figure 26: Typical Component Locations for Wall-Mount Enclosures:
1-20 hp CT and 1-25 hp VT @ $460 \mathrm{~V} ; 1-10 \mathrm{hp}$ CT/VT @ 208/230 V


Shown: Class 8839 Type MFDHA2CY, Mods F07, F08, F09, A10, B10, C10, E10, F10, L10, S10, T10, U10, W10

Figure 27: Typical Component Locations for Floor-Mount Integrated Enclosures: 25-75 hp CT and 30-100 hp VT @ 460 V; 15-40 hp CT and 15-50 hp VT @ 208/230 V


Shown: Class 8839 Type MFDPG4VW, Mods F07, F08, N09, A10, E10, F10, J10, K10, Q10, S10, W10

Figure 28: Typical Component Locations for Floor-Mount Barriered Enclosures:
25-75 hp CT and 30-100 hp VT @ 460 V; 15-40 hp CT and 15-50 hp VT @ 208/230 V


Shown: Class 8839 Type MFDLG4CZ, Mods A07, E08, A10, C10, E10, O10, Q10, R10, S10, T10, W10

Figure 29: Typical Component Locations for Floor-Mount Enclosures: 100-450 hp CT and 125-500 hp VT @ 480 V


Shown: Class 8839 Type MFD6G4VW, Mods F07, A08, F09

## Power Wiring

Table 32: Power Terminal Functions [1]

| Terminal | Function |
| :---: | :---: |
| GND | Ground bar and ground lugs |
| with and without integrated bypass | 3-phase input power (at top of circuit breaker) |
| L1, L2, L3 with barriered | 1-75 hp CT and 1-100 hp VT: <br> 3-phase input power at distribution block DB1 |
| bypass | 100 hp CT and 125 hp VT: <br> 3-phase input power at disconnect switch |
| with bypass | Output connections to motor (at bottom of overload relay) |
| T1, T2, T3 without bypass | Output connections to motor (power distribution block DB3), 1-100 hp VT / 1-75 hp CT |
| without bypass | Output connections to motor (converter terminals), 100-450 hp CT, 125-500 hp VT |
| Output 1, Output 2, Output 3 [2] | Output from fuses to externally mounted harmonic filter. |
| Input 1, Input 2, Input $3{ }^{[2]}$ | Input from externally mounted harmonic filter to controller. |
| 1. For terminal locations refer to Figures 26-29 on pages 64-67. <br> 2. Only applicable with option 710, harmonic filter provision. |  |

## Wire Range and Power Terminal Torque Requirements

- Controller: For the wire range and power terminal torque requirements of the controller, refer to Tables 33-39 beginning on page 69.
- Power converter: For the power terminal torque requirements of the power converter, refer to Tables 57-59 beginning on page 107.

Table 33: Drive Converter Terminal Wire Size and Torque

| Constant Torque <br> Converter | hp | Max. Wire Size |  | Terminal Torque |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | AWG | mm ${ }^{2}$ | lb-in | $\mathrm{N} \cdot \mathrm{m}$ |
| 208/230 V |  |  |  |  |  |
| ATV71H037M3 | 0.5 | 10 | 4 | 12.3 | 1.4 |
| ATV71H075M3 | 1 | 10 | 4 | 12.3 | 1.4 |
| ATV71HU15M3 | 2 | 10 | 4 | 12.3 | 1.4 |
| ATV71HU22M3 | 3 | 10 | 4 | 12.3 | 1.4 |
| ATV71HU30M3 | 4 | 10 | 4 | 12.3 | 1.4 |
| ATV71HU40M3 | 5 | 10 | 4 | 12.3 | 1.4 |
| ATV71HU55M3 | 7.5 | 8 | 6 | 26.5 | 3 |
| ATV71HU75M3 | 10 | 4 | 16 | 26.5 | 3 |
| ATV71HD11M3X | 15 | 2 | 35 | 47.7 | 5.4 |
| ATV71HD15M3X | 20 | 2 | 35 | 47.7 | 5.4 |
| ATV71HD18M3X | 25 | 1/0 | 50 | 106.2 | 12 |
| ATV71HD22M3X | 30 | 1/0 | 50 | 106.2 | 12 |
| ATV71HD30M3X | 40 | 300 | 150 | 360 | 41 |

460 V

| ATV71H075N4 | 1 | 10 | 4 | 12.3 | 1.4 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| ATV71HU15N4 | 2 | 10 | 4 | 12.3 | 1.4 |
| ATV71HU22N4 | 3 | 10 | 4 | 12.3 | 1.4 |
| ATV71HU30N4 | 4 | 10 | 4 | 12.3 | 1.4 |
| ATV71HU40N4 | 5 | 10 | 4 | 12.3 | 1.4 |
| ATV71HU55N4 | 7.5 | 8 | 6 | 26.5 | 3 |
| ATV71HU75N4 | 10 | 8 | 6 | 26.5 | 3 |
| ATV71HD11N4 | 15 | 4 | 16 | 26.5 | 3 |
| ATV71HD15N4 | 20 | 2 | 35 | 47.7 | 5.4 |
| ATV71HD18N4 | 25 | 2 | 35 | 47.7 | 5.4 |
| ATV71HD22N4 | 30 | $1 / 0$ | 50 | 106.2 | 12 |
| ATV71HD30N4 | 40 | $1 / 0$ | 50 | 106.2 | 12 |
| ATV71HD37N4 | 50 | $1 / 0$ | 50 | 106.2 | 12 |
| ATV71HD45N4 | 60 | 300 | 150 | 360 | 41 |
| ATV71HD55N4 | 75 | 300 | 150 | 360 | 41 |
| ATV71HD75N4 | 100 | 300 | 150 | 360 | 41 |
| ATV71HD90N4D | 125 | $2-250$ | $2-100$ | 212 | 24 |
| ATV71HC11N4D | 150 | $2-250$ | $2-100$ | 212 | 24 |
| ATV71HC13N4D | 200 | $2-250$ | $2-120$ | 212 | 24 |
| ATV71HC16N4D | 250 | $2-350$ | $2-150$ | 360 | 41 |
| ATV71HC20N4D | 300 | $3-350$ | $4-185$ | 360 | 41 |
| ATV71HC25N4D | 350 | $3-350$ | $4-185$ | 360 | 41 |
| ATV71HC25N4D | 400 | $3-350$ | $4-185$ | 360 | 41 |
| ATV71HC28N4D | 450 | $3-350$ | $4-185$ | 360 | 41 |


| Variable Torque | Max. Wire Size | Terminal Torque |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Converter |  | AWG | $\mathbf{m m}^{\mathbf{2}}$ | lb-in | N•m |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| $\mathbf{2 0 8 / 2 3 0 ~ V ~}$ |  |  |  |  |  |
| ATV61H075M3 | $1-1.5$ | 10 | 4 | 12.3 | 1.4 |
| ATV61HU15M3 | $2-3$ | 10 | 4 | 12.3 | 1.4 |
| ATV61HU30M3 | 5 | 10 | 4 | 12.3 | 1.4 |
| ATV61HU40M3 | 7.5 | 10 | 4 | 12.3 | 1.4 |
| ATV61HU55M3 | 10 | 8 | 6 | 26.5 | 3 |
| ATV61HU75M3 | 15 | 4 | 16 | 26.5 | 3 |
| ATV61HD11M3X | 20 | 2 | 35 | 47.7 | 5.4 |
| ATV61HD15M3X | 25 | 2 | 35 | 47.7 | 5.4 |
| ATV61HD18M3X | 30 | $1 / 0$ | 50 | 106.2 | 12 |
| ATV61HD22M3X | 40 | $1 / 0$ | 50 | 106.2 | 12 |
| ATV61HD30M3X | 50 | 300 | 150 | 360 | 41 |

460 V

| ATV61H075N4 | 1 | 10 | 4 | 12.3 | 1.4 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| ATV61HU15N4 | $2-3$ | 10 | 4 | 12.3 | 1.4 |
| ATV61HU30N4 | 5 | 10 | 4 | 12.3 | 1.4 |
| ATV61HU40N4 | 7.5 | 10 | 4 | 12.3 | 1.4 |
| ATV61HU55N4 | 10 | 8 | 6 | 26.5 | 3 |
| ATV61HU75N4 | 15 | 8 | 6 | 26.5 | 3 |
| ATV61HD11N4 | 20 | 4 | 16 | 26.5 | 3 |
| ATV61HD15N4 | 25 | 2 | 35 | 47.7 | 5.4 |
| ATV61HD18N4 | 30 | 2 | 35 | 47.7 | 5.4 |
| ATV61HD22N4 | 40 | $1 / 0$ | 50 | 106.2 | 12 |
| ATV61HD30N4 | 50 | $1 / 0$ | 50 | 106.2 | 12 |
| ATV61HD37N4 | 60 | $1 / 0$ | 50 | 106.2 | 12 |
| ATV61HD45N4 | 75 | 300 | 150 | 360 | 41 |
| ATV61HD55N4 | 100 | 300 | 150 | 360 | 41 |
| ATV61HD75N4 | 125 | 300 | 150 | 360 | 41 |
| ATV61HD90N4D | 125 | $2-250$ | $2-100$ | 212 | 24 |
| ATV61HC11N4D | 150 | $2-250$ | $2-100$ | 212 | 24 |
| ATV61HC13N4D | 200 | $2-250$ | $2-100$ | 212 | 24 |
| ATV61HC16N4D | 250 | $2-250$ | $2-120$ | 212 | 24 |
| ATV61HC22N4D | $300-350$ | $2-350$ | $2-150$ | 360 | 41 |
| ATV61HC25N4D | 400 | $3-350$ | $4-185$ | 360 | 41 |
| ATV61HC31N4D | $450-500$ | $3-350$ | $4-185$ | 360 | 41 |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |

Table 34: Circuit Breaker Terminal Wire Size and Torque—Constant Torque Controller

| $\begin{aligned} & \text { CT } \\ & \text { hp } \end{aligned}$ | Circuit Breaker |  | Wire Range, AWG ( $\mathrm{mm}^{\mathbf{2}}$ ) |  |  | Terminal Torque, lb-in ( $\mathrm{N} \cdot \mathrm{m}$ ) |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 460 V | 230/208 V | 460 V | 230 V | 208 V | 460 V | 230 V | 208 V |
| 1 | HLL36015 | HLL36015 | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 50 (5) | 50 (5) | 50 (5) |
|  |  |  | 8-3/0 (10-95) | 8-3/0 (10-95) | 8-3/0 (10-95) | 120 (14) | 120 (14) | 120 (14) |
| 2 | HLL36015 | HLL36025 | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 50 (5) | 50 (5) | 50 (5) |
|  |  |  | 8-3/0 (10-95) | 8-3/0 (10-95) | 8-3/0 (10-95) | 120 (14) | 120 (14) | 120 (14) |
| 3 | HLL36015 | HLL36035 | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 50 (5) | 50 (5) | 50 (5) |
|  |  |  | 8-3/0 (10-95) | 8-3/0 (10-95) | 8-3/0 (10-95) | 120 (14) | 120 (14) | 120 (14) |
| 5 | HLL36025 | HLL36060 | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 50 (5) | 50 (5) | 50 (5) |
|  |  |  | 8-3/0 (10-95) | 8-3/0 (10-95) | 8-3/0 (10-95) | 120 (14) | 120 (14) | 120 (14) |
| 7.5 | HLL36040 | HLL36080 | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 50 (5) | 50 (5) | 50 (5) |
|  |  |  | 8-3/0 (10-95) | 8-3/0 (10-95) | 8-3/0 (10-95) | 120 (14) | 120 (14) | 120 (14) |
| 10 | HLL36050 | HLL36110 | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 50 (5) | 50 (5) | 50 (5) |
|  |  |  | 8-3/0 (10-95) | 8-3/0 (10-95) | 8-3/0 (10-95) | 120 (14) | 120 (14) | 120 (14) |
| 15 | HLL36070 | HLL36110 | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 50 (5) | 50 (5) | 50 (5) |
|  |  |  | 8-3/0 (10-95) | 8-3/0 (10-95) | 8-3/0 (10-95) | 120 (14) | 120 (14) | 120 (14) |
| 20 | HLL36100 | HLL36150 | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 50 (5) | 50 (5) | 50 (5) |
|  |  |  | 8-3/0 (10-95) | 8-3/0 (10-95) | 8-3/0 (10-95) | 120 (14) | 120 (14) | 120 (14) |
| 25 | HLL36090 | JLL36175 | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 3/0-350 (120-185) | 3/0-350 (120-185) | 50 (5) | 225 (25) | 225 (25) |
|  |  |  | 8-3/0 (10-95) |  |  | 120 (14) |  |  |
| 30 | HLL36100 | JLL36200 | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 3/0-350 (120-185) | 3/0-350 (120-185) | 50 (5) | 225 (25) | 225 (25) |
|  |  |  | 8-3/0 (10-95) |  |  | 120 (14) |  |  |
| 40 | HLL36125 | JLL36250 | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 3/0-350 (120-185) | 3/0-350 (120-185) | 50 (5) | 225 (25) | 225 (25) |
|  |  |  | 8-3/0 (10-95) |  |  | 120 (14) |  |  |
| 50 | HLL36150 | - | 14-10 (2.5-6) | - | - | 50 (5) | - | - |
|  |  | - | 8-3/0 (10-95) | - | - | 120 (14) | - | - |
| 60 | JLL36200 | - | 3/0-350 (120-185) | - | - | 225 (25) | - | - |
| 75 | JLL36225 | - | 3/0-350 (120-185) | - | - | 225 (25) | - | - |
| 100 | JLL36250 | - | 3/0-350 (120-185) | - | - | 225 (25) | - | - |
| 125 | LIL36300 | - | [2] 4/0-500 (95-253) | - | - | 300 (34) | - | - |
|  | LLL36400U31X | - | [2] 2/0-500 (70-240) | - | - | 442 (50) | - | - |
| 150 | LIL36300 | - | [2] 4/0-500 (95-253) | - | - | 300 (34) | - | - |
|  | LLL36400U31X | - | [2] 2/0-500 (70-240) | - | - | 442 (50) | - | - |
| 200 | LIL36400 | - | [2] 4/0-500 (95-253) | - | - | 300 (34) | - | - |
|  | LLL36400U31X | - | [2] 2/0-500 (70-240) | - | - | 442 (50) | - | - |
| 250 | $\begin{aligned} & \hline \text { LIL36400 [1] } \\ & \text { LPJ400SP } \end{aligned}$ | - | [2] 4/0-500 (95-253) | - | - | 300 (34) | - | - |
|  | LLL36400U31X | - | [2] 2/0-500 (70-240) | - | - | 442 (50) | - | - |
| 300 | $\begin{array}{\|l\|} \hline \text { MJL36600LW [1] } \\ \text { LPJ500SP } \\ \hline \end{array}$ | - | [3] 3/0-500 (95-253) | - | - | 450 (51) | - | - |
|  | $\begin{array}{\|l} \hline \begin{array}{l} \text { PLL34060LW } \\ \text { [1] } \\ \hline \end{array} \\ \hline \end{array}$ | - | [3] 3/0-500 (95-253) | - | - | 450 (51) | - | - |
| 350 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { MJL36600LW [1] } \\ & \text { LPJ600SP } \end{aligned}$ | - | [3] 3/0-500 (95-253) | - | - | 450 (51) | - | - |
|  | $\begin{array}{\|l} \hline \text { PLL34060LW [1] } \\ \text { LPJ600SP } \\ \hline \end{array}$ | - | [3] 3/0-500 (95-253) | - | - | 450 (51) | - | - |
| 400 | $\begin{array}{\|l\|} \hline \text { MJL36800LW [1] } \\ \text { LPJ600SP } \\ \hline \end{array}$ | - | [3] 3/0-500 (95-253) | - | - | 450 (51) | - | - |
|  | $\begin{array}{\|l} \hline \text { PLL34080LW [1] } \\ \text { LPJ600SP } \\ \hline \end{array}$ | - | [3] 3/0-500 (95-253) | - | - | 450 (51) | - | - |
| 450 | $\begin{array}{\|l\|} \hline \text { MJL36800LW [1] } \\ \text { LPJ600SP } \\ \hline \end{array}$ | - | [3] 3/0-500 (95-253) | - | - | 450 (51) | - | - |
|  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { PLL34080LW [1] } \\ & \text { LPJ600SP } \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | - | [3] 3/0-500 (95-253) | - | - | 450 (51) | - | - |

Table 35: Circuit Breaker Terminal Wire Size and Torque-Variable Torque Controller

| VT <br> hp | Circuit Breaker |  | Wire Range, AWG (mm²) |  |  | Terminal Torque, lb-in ( $\mathrm{N} \cdot \mathrm{m}$ ) |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 460 V | 230/208 V | 460 V | 230 V | 208 V | 460 V | 230 V | 208 V |
| 1 | HLL36015 | HLL36015 | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 50 (5) | 50 (5) | 50 (5) |
|  |  |  | 8-3/0 (10-95) | 8-3/0 (10-95) | 8-3/0 (10-95) | 120 (14) | 120 (14) | 120 (14) |
| 2 | HLL36015 | HLL36015 | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 50 (5) | 50 (5) | 50 (5) |
|  |  |  | 8-3/0 (10-95) | 8-3/0 (10-95) | 8-3/0 (10-95) | 120 (14) | 120 (14) | 120 (14) |
| 3 | HLL36015 | HLL36025 | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 50 (5) | 50 (5) | 50 (5) |
|  |  |  | 8-3/0 (10-95) | 8-3/0 (10-95) | 8-3/0 (10-95) | 120 (14) | 120 (14) | 120 (14) |
| 5 | HLL36015 | HLL36040 | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 50 (5) | 50 (5) | 50 (5) |
|  |  |  | 8-3/0 (10-95) | 8-3/0 (10-95) | 8-3/0 (10-95) | 120 (14) | 120 (14) | 120 (14) |
| 7.5 | HLL36025 | HLL36060 | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 50 (5) | 50 (5) | 50 (5) |
|  |  |  | 8-3/0 (10-95) | 8-3/0 (10-95) | 8-3/0 (10-95) | 120 (14) | 120 (14) | 120 (14) |
| 10 | HLL36035 | HLL36070 | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 50 (5) | 50 (5) | 50 (5) |
|  |  |  | 8-3/0 (10-95) | 8-3/0 (10-95) | 8-3/0 (10-95) | 120 (14) | 120 (14) | 120 (14) |
| 15 | HLL36050 | HLL36110 | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 50 (5) | 50 (5) | 50 (5) |
|  |  |  | 8-3/0 (10-95) | 8-3/0 (10-95) | 8-3/0 (10-95) | 120 (14) | 120 (14) | 120 (14) |
| 20 | HLL36060 | HLL36125 | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 50 (5) | 50 (5) | 50 (5) |
|  |  |  | 8-3/0 (10-95) | 8-3/0 (10-95) | 8-3/0 (10-95) | 120 (14) | 120 (14) | 120 (14) |
| 25 | HLL36080 | JLL36175 | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 1/0-4/0 (50-95) | 1/0-4/0 (50-95) | 50 (5) | 225 (25) | 225 (25) |
|  |  |  | 8-3/0 (10-95) |  |  | 120 (14) |  |  |
| 30 | HLL36100 | JLL36200 | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 3/0-350 (120-185) | 3/0-350 (120-185) | 50 (5) | 225 (25) | 225 (25) |
|  |  |  | 8-3/0 (10-95) |  |  | 120 (14) |  |  |
| 40 | HLL36125 | JLL36250 | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 3/0-350 (120-185) | 3/0-350 (120-185) | 50 (5) | 225 (25) | 225 (25) |
|  |  |  | 8-3/0 (10-95) |  |  | 120 (14) |  |  |
| 50 | HLL36150 | JLL36250 | 14-10 (2.5-6) | 3/0-350 (120-185) | 3/0-350 (120-185) | 50 (5) | 225 (25) | 225 (25) |
|  |  |  | 8-3/0 (10-95) |  |  | 120 (14) |  |  |
| 60 | JLL36175 | - | 1/0-4/0 (50-95) | - | - | 225 (25) | - | - |
| 75 | JLL36225 | - | 3/0-350 (120-185) | - | - | 225 (25) | - | - |
| 100 | JLL36250 | - | 3/0-350 (120-185) | - | - | 225 (25) | - | - |
| 125 | JLL36250 | - | 3/0-350 (120-185) | - | - | 225 (25) | - | - |
| 150 | LIL36300 | - | [2] 4/0-500 (95-253) | - | - | 300 (34) | - | - |
|  | LLL36400U31X | - | [2] 2/0-500 (70-240) | - | - | 442 (50) | - | - |
| 200 | LIL36400 | - | [2] 4/0-500 (95-253) | - | - | 300 (34) | - | - |
|  | LLL36400U31X | - | [2] 2/0-500 (70-240) | - | - | 442 (50) | - | - |
| 250 | LIL36400 | - | [2] 4/0-500 (95-253) | - | - | 300 (34) | - | - |
|  | LLL36400U31X | - | [2] 2/0-500 (70-240) | - | - | 442 (50) | - | - |
| 300 | MJL36600LW [1] LPJ500SP | - | [3] 3/0-500 (95-253) | - | - | 450 (51) | - | - |
|  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { PLL34060LW [1] } \\ & \text { LPJ500SP } \end{aligned}$ | - | [3] 3/0-500 (95-253) | - | - | 450 (51) | - | - |
| 350 | $\begin{array}{\|l} \hline \text { MJL36600LW [1] } \\ \text { LPJ600SP } \\ \hline \end{array}$ | - | [3] 3/0-500 (95-253) | - | - | 450 (51) | - | - |
|  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { PLL34060LW [1] } \\ & \text { LPJ600SP } \end{aligned}$ | - | [3] 3/0-500 (95-253) | - | - | 450 (51) | - | - |
| 400 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { MJL36800LW [1] } \\ & \text { LPJ600SP } \end{aligned}$ | - | [3] 3/0-500 (95-253) | - | - | 450 (51) | - | - |
|  | $\begin{array}{\|l\|} \hline \text { PLL34080LW [1] } \\ \text { LPJ600SP } \\ \hline \end{array}$ | - | [3] 3/0-500 (95-253) | - | - | 450 (51) | - | - |
| 450 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { MJL36800LW [1] } \\ & \text { LPJ600SP } \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | - | [3] 3/0-500 (95-253) | - | - | 450 (51) | - | - |
|  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { PLL34080LW [1] } \\ & \text { LPJ600SP } \end{aligned}$ | - | [3] 3/0-500 (95-253) | - | - | 450 (51) | - | - |
| 500 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { PLL34100LW [1] } \\ & \text { LPL600SP } \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | - | [3] 3/0-500 (95-253) | - | - | 450 (51) | - | - |
| 1 Circuit breaker with Class J time-delay fuses. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

Table 36: Variable Torque Controllers
Power Terminal Wire Range: Distribution Block Terminals and Overload Relay Output Terminals

| hp | Distribution Block Terminals T1, T2, T3 (Load) |  |  |  |  |  | Overload Relay Output Terminals <br> T1, T2, T3 (Load) |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Max Wire Size, AWG (mm²) |  |  | Terminal Torque, lb-in ( $\mathrm{N} \cdot \mathrm{m}$ ) |  |  | Max Wire Size, AWG (mm²) |  |  | Terminal Torque, lb-in ( $\mathrm{N} \cdot \mathrm{m}$ ) |  |  |
|  | 460 V | 230 V | 208 V | 460 V | 230 V | 208 V | 460 V | 230 V | 208 V | 460 V | 230 V | 208 V |
| 1 | 2/0 (67.4) | 2/0 (67.4) | 2/0 (67.4) | 35 (4.0) | 35 (4.0) | 35 (4.0) | 10 (5.26) | 10 (5.26) | 10 (5.26) | 15 (1.69) | 15 (1.69) | 15 (1.69) |
| 2 | 2/0 (67.4) | 2/0 (67.4) | 2/0 (67.4) | 35 (4.0) | 35 (4.0) | 35 (4.0) | 10 (5.26) | 10 (5.26) | 10 (5.26) | 15 (1.69) | 15 (1.69) | 15 (1.69) |
| 3 | $2 / 0$ (67.4) | $2 / 0$ (67.4) | $2 / 0$ (67.4) | 35 (4.0) | 35 (4.0) | 35 (4.0) | 10 (5.26) | 10 (5.26) | 10 (5.26) | 15 (1.69) | 15 (1.69) | 15 (1.69) |
| 5 | 2/0 (67.4) | $2 / 0$ (67.4) | $2 / 0$ (67.4) | 35 (4.0) | 35 (4.0) | 35 (4.0) | 10 (5.26) | 10 (5.26) | 10 (5.26) | 15 (1.69) | 15 (1.69) | 15 (1.69) |
| 7.5 | 2/0 (67.4) | $2 / 0$ (67.4) | $2 / 0$ (67.4) | 35 (4.0) | 40 (4.5) | 40 (4.5) | 10 (5.26) | 6 (13.3) | 6 (13.3) | 15 (1.69) | 15 (1.69) | 15 (1.69) |
| 10 | 2/0 (67.4) | $2 / 0$ (67.4) | $2 / 0$ (67.4) | 35 (4.0) | 40 (4.5) | 40 (4.5) | 10 (5.26) | 6 (13.3) | 6 (13.3) | 15 (1.69) | 15 (1.69) | 15 (1.69) |
| 15 | 2/0 (67.4) | 2/0 (67.4) | 2/0 (67.4) | 40 (4.5) | 120 (13.5) | 120 (13.5) | 10 (5.26) | 6 (13.3) | 1/0 (53.5) | 15 (1.69) | 75 (8.47) | 75 (8.47) |
| 20 | 2/0 (67.4) | 400 (203) | 400 (203) | 40 (4.5) | 250 (28.3) | 250 (28.3) | 6 (13.3) | 6 (13.3) | 1/0 (53.5) | 15 (1.69) | 75 (8.47) | 75 (8.47) |
| 25 | $2 / 0$ (67.4) | 400 (203) | 400 (203) | 40 (4.5) | 250 (28.3) | 250 (28.3) | $1 / 0$ (53.5) | 6 (13.3) | 1/0 (53.5) | 75 (8.47) | 75 (8.47) | 75 (8.47) |
| 30 | 2/0 (67.4) | 350 (177) | 350 (177) | 120 (3.6) | 250 (28.3) | 250 (28.3) | 1100 (53.5) | 3/0 (85) | $3 / 0$ (85) | 75 (8.47) | 200 (22.6) | 200 (22.6) |
| 40 | 2/0 (67.4) | 350 (177) | 350 (177) | 120 (3.6) | 250 (28.3) | 250 (28.3) | $1 / 0$ (53.5) | 3/0 (85) | $3 / 0$ (85) | 75 (8.47) | 200 (22.6) | 200 (22.6) |
| 50 | 350 (177) | 350 (177) | 350 (177) | 250 (28.3) | 250 (28.3) | 250 (28.3) | $1 / 0$ (53.5) | 3/0 (85) | $3 / 0$ (85) | 75 (8.47) | 200 (22.6) | 200 (22.6) |
| 60 | 350 (177) | - | - | 250 (28.3) | - | - | $1 / 0$ (53.5) | - | - | 75 (8.47) | - | - |
| 75 | 350 (177) | - | - | 250 (28.3) | - | - | 250 (127) | - | - | 300 (33.9) | - | - |
| 100 | 350 (177) | - | - | 250 (28.3) | - | - | 250 (127) | - | - | 300 (33.9) | - | - |
| 125 | 500 (253) | - | - | 375 (42.4) | - | - | 3/0 (85) | - | - | - | - | - |
| 150 | 500 (253) | - | - | 375 (42.4) | - | - | 3/0 (85) | - | - | - | - | - |
| 200 | 500 (253) | - | - | 375 (42.4) | - | - | 300 (152) | - | - | - | - | - |
| 250 | 500 (253) | - | - | 375 (42.4) | - | - | 500 (253) | - | - | - | - | - |
| 300 | $\begin{array}{\|l\|l} \hline 2-600 \\ (304) \end{array}$ | - | - | 375 (42.4) | - | - | 500 (253) | - | - | - | - | - |
| 350 | $\begin{aligned} & 2-600 \\ & (304) \end{aligned}$ | - | - | 375 (42.4) | - | - | $\begin{array}{\|l} \hline 2-500 \\ (253) \end{array}$ | - | - | - | - | - |
| 400 | $\begin{aligned} & 2-600 \\ & (304) \end{aligned}$ | - | - | 375 (42.4) | - | - | $\begin{array}{\|l\|l} \hline 2-500 \\ (253) \end{array}$ | - | - | - | - | - |
| 450 | $\begin{array}{\|l\|l} \hline 2-600 \\ (304) \end{array}$ | - | - | 375 (42.4) | - | - | $\begin{array}{\|l\|l} \hline 2-500 \\ (253) \end{array}$ | - | - | - | - | - |
| 500 | $\begin{array}{\|l\|l} \hline 2-600 \\ (304) \\ \hline \end{array}$ | - | - | 375 (42.4) | - | - | $\begin{array}{\|l} \hline 2-500 \\ (253) \end{array}$ | - | - | - | - | - |

## Table 37: Constant Torque Controllers

Power Terminal Wire Range: Distribution Block Terminals and Overload Relay Output Terminals

| hp | Distribution Block Terminals T1, T2, T3 (Load) |  |  |  |  |  | Overload Relay Output Terminals T1, T2, T3 (Load) |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Max Wire Size, AWG (mm ${ }^{\text {2 }}$ ) |  |  | Terminal Torque, lib-in ( $\mathrm{N} \cdot \mathrm{m}$ ) |  |  | Max Wire Size, AWG ( $\mathrm{mm}^{2}$ ) |  |  | Terminal Torque, lb-in ( $\mathrm{N} \cdot \mathrm{m}$ ) |  |  |
|  | 460 V | 230 V | 208 V | 460 V | 230 V | 208 V | 460 V | 230 V | 208 V | 460 V | 230 V | 208 V |
| 1 | $2 / 0$ (67.4) | $2 / 0$ (67.4) | 210 (67.4) | 35 (4.0) | $35(4.0)$ | 35 (4.0) | 10 (5.26) | 10 (5.26) | 10 (5.26) | 15 (1.69) | 15 (1.69) | 15 (1.69) |
| 2 | 2/0(67.4) | 2/0(67.4) | 2/0(67.4) | 35 (4.0) | 35 (4.0) | 35 (4.0) | 10 (5.26) | 10 (5.26) | 10 (5.26) | 15 (1.69) | 15 (1.69) | 15 (1.69) |
| 3 | 200(67.4) | 20(67.4) | 2/0(67.4) | 35 (4.0) | $35(4.0)$ | 35 (4.0) | 10 (5.26) | 10 (5.26) | 10 (5.26) | 15 (1.69) | 15 (1.69) | 15 (1.69) |
| 5 | 200(67.4) | 20067.4) | 20067.4) | 35 (4.0) | 35 (4.0) | 35 (4.0) | 10 (5.26) | 10 (5.26) | 10 (5.26) | 15 (1.69) | 15 (1.69) | 15 (1.69) |
| 7.5 | 2/0(67.4) | 20067.4) | 2/0(67.4) | 35 (4.0) | 40 (4.5) | 40 (4.5) | 10 (5.26) | 6 (13.3) | 6 (13.3) | 15 (1.69) | 15 (1.69) | 15 (1.69) |
| 10 | 2/0(67.4) | 20(67.4) | 20(67.4) | 35 (4.0) | 40 (4.5) | 40 (4.5) | 10 (5.26) | 6 (13.3) | 6 (13.3) | 15 (1.69) | 15 (1.69) | 15 (1.69) |
| 15 | 2/0(67.4) | 20067.4) | 2/0(67.4) | 40 (4.5) | 120 (13.5) | 120 (13.5) | 10 (5.26) | 6 (13.3) | 1100 (53.5) | 15 (1.69) | 75 (8.47) | 75 (8.47) |
| 20 | 20067.4) | 400 (203) | 400 (203) | 40 (4.5) | 250 (28.3) | 250 (28.3) | 6 (13.3) | 6 (13.3) | $1 / 0$ (53.5) | 15 (1.69) | 75 (8.47) | 75 (8.47) |
| 25 | 200(67.4) | 400 (203) | 400 (203) | 40 (4.5) | 250 (28.3) | 250 (28.3) | $110(53.5)$ | 6 (13.3) | $1 / 0$ (53.5) | 75 (8.47) | 75 (8.47) | 75 (8.47) |
| 30 | 2/0(67.4) | 350 (177) | 350 (177) | 120 (3.6) | 250 (28.3) | 250 (28.3) | $110(53.5)$ | 3/0 (85) | 3/0 (85) | 75 (8.47) | 200 (22.6) | 200 (22.6) |
| 40 | 20(67.4) | 350 (177) | 350 (177) | 120 (3.6) | 250 (28.3) | 250 (28.3) | $110(53.5)$ | $3 / 0$ (85) | 310 (85) | 75 (8.47) | 200 (22.6) | 200 (22.6) |
| 50 | 350 (177) | - | - | 250 (28.3) | - | - | $110(53.5)$ | - | - | 75 (8.47) | - | - |
| 60 | 350 (177) | - | - | 250 (28.3) | - | - | $110(53.5)$ | - | - | 75 (8.47) | - | - |
| 75 | 350 (177) | - | - | 250 (28.3) | - | - | 250 (127) | - | - | 300 (33.9) | - | - |
| 100 | 350 (177) | - | - | 250 (28.3) | - | - | 250 (127) | - | - | 300 (33.9) | - | - |
| 125 | 500 (253) | - | - | 375 (42.4) | - | - | $3 / 0$ (85) | - | - | - | - | - |
| 150 | 500 (253) | - | - | 375 (42.4) | - | - | 3/0 (85) | - | - | - | - | - |
| 200 | 500 (253) | - | - | 375 (42.4) | - | - | 300 (152) | - | - | - | - | - |
| 250 | 500 (253) | - | - | 375 (42.4) | - | - | 500 (253) | - | - | - | - | - |
| 300 | $\begin{array}{\|l\|l\|} \hline 2-600 \\ (304) \\ \hline \end{array}$ | - | - | 375 (42.4) | - | - | 500 (253) | - | - | - | - | - |
| 350 | $\begin{array}{\|l\|l} 2-600 \\ (304) \\ \hline \end{array}$ | - | - | 375 (42.4) | - | - | $\begin{aligned} & 2-500 \\ & (253) \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | - | - | - | - | - |
| 400 | $\begin{array}{\|l\|l\|} \hline 2-600 \\ (304) \\ \hline \end{array}$ | - | - | 375 (42.4) | - | - | $\begin{aligned} & 2-500 \\ & (253) \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | - | - | - | - | - |
| 450 | $\begin{array}{\|l\|l} 2-600 \\ (304) \\ \hline \end{array}$ | - | - | 375 (42.4) | - | - | $\begin{aligned} & 2-500 \\ & (253) \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | - | - | - | - | - |

Table 38: Variable Torque Controllers, Power Terminal Wire Range: Ground Bar and Ground Lugs

| hp | Ground Bar |  |  |  |  |  | Ground Lugs |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Max Wire Size, AWG (mm²) |  |  | Terminal Torque, lb-in ( $\mathrm{N} \cdot \mathrm{m}$ ) |  |  | Max Wire Size, AWG (mm²) |  |  | Terminal Torque, lb-in ( $\mathrm{N} \cdot \mathrm{m}$ ) |  |  |
|  | 460 V | 230 V | 208 V | 460 V | 230 V | 208 V | 460 V | 230 V | 208 V | 460 V | 230 V | 208 V |
| 1 | 4 (21.15) | 4 (21.15) | 4 (21.15) | 20 (2.26) | 20 (2.26) | 20 (2.26) | 4/0 (107) | 4/0 (107) | 4/0 (107) | 110 (12.43) | 110 (12.43) | 110 (12.43) |
| 2 | 4 (21.15) | 4 (21.15) | 4 (21.15) | 20 (2.26) | 20 (2.26) | 20 (2.26) | 4/0 (107) | 4/0 (107) | 4/0 (107) | 110 (12.43) | 110 (12.43) | 110 (12.43) |
| 3 | 4 (21.15) | 4 (21.15) | 4 (21.15) | 20 (2.26) | 20 (2.26) | 20 (2.26) | 4/0 (107) | 4/0 (107) | 4/0 (107) | 110 (12.43) | 110 (12.43) | 110 (12.43) |
| 5 | 4 (21.15) | 4 (21.15) | 4 (21.15) | 20 (2.26) | 20 (2.26) | 20 (2.26) | 4/0 (107) | 4/0 (107) | 4/0 (107) | 110 (12.43) | 110 (12.43) | 110 (12.43) |
| 7.5 | 4 (21.15) | 4 (21.15) | 4 (21.15) | 20 (2.26) | 20 (2.26) | 20 (2.26) | 4/0 (107) | 4/0 (107) | 4/0 (107) | 110 (12.43) | 110 (12.43) | 110 (12.43) |
| 10 | 4 (21.15) | 4 (21.15) | 4 (21.15) | 20 (2.26) | 20 (2.26) | 20 (2.26) | 4/0 (107) | 4/0 (107) | 4/0 (107) | 110 (12.43) | 110 (12.43) | 110 (12.43) |
| 15 | 4 (21.15) | 1/0 (53.5) | 1/0 (53.5) | 20 (2.26) | 45 (5.1) | 45 (5.1) | 4/0 (107) | 4/0 (107) | 4/0 (107) | 110 (12.43) | 110 (12.43) | 110 (12.43) |
| 20 | 4 (21.15) | 1/0 (53.5) | 1/0 (53.5) | 20 (2.26) | 45 (5.1) | 45 (5.1) | 4/0 (107) | 4/0 (107) | 4/0 (107) | 110 (12.43) | 110 (12.43) | 110 (12.43) |
| 25 | 4 (21.15) | 1/0 (53.5) | 1/0 (53.5) | 20 (2.26) | 45 (5.1) | 45 (5.1) | 4/0 (107) | 4/0 (107) | 4/0 (107) | 110 (12.43) | 110 (12.43) | 110 (12.43) |
| 30 | 1/0 (53.5) | 1/0 (53.5) | 1/0 (53.5) | 45 (5.1) | 45 (5.1) | 45 (5.1) | 4/0 (107) | 350 (177) | 350 (177) | 110 (12.43) | 250 (28.3) | 250 (28.3) |
| 40 | 1/0 (53.5) | 1/0 (53.5) | 1/0 (53.5) | 45 (5.1) | 45 (5.1) | 45 (5.1) | 4/0 (107) | 350 (177) | 350 (177) | 110 (12.43) | 250 (28.3) | 250 (28.3) |
| 50 | 1/0 (53.5) | 1/0 (53.5) | 1/0 (53.5) | 45 (5.1) | 45 (5.1) | 45 (5.1) | 4/0 (107) | 350 (177) | 350 (177) | 110 (12.43) | 250 (28.3) | 250 (28.3) |
| 60 | 1/0 (53.5) | - | - | 45 (5.1) | - | - | 350 (177) | - | - | 250 (28.3) | - | - |
| 75 | 1/0 (53.5) | - | - | 45 (5.1) | - | - | 350 (177) | - | - | 250 (28.3) | - | - |
| 100 | 1/0 (53.5) | - | - | 45 (5.1) | - | - | 350 (177) | - | - | 250 (28.3) | - | - |
| 125 | 250 (127) | - | - | 200 (22.6) | - | - | 300 (152) | - | - | 275 (31.1) | - | - |
| 150 | 250 (127) | - | - | 200 (22.6) | - | - | 300 (152) | - | - | 275 (31.1) | - | - |
| 200 | 250 (127) | - | - | 200 (22.6) | - | - | 300 (152) | - | - | 275 (31.1) | - | - |
| 250 | 250 (127) | - | - | 200 (22.6) | - | - | 300 (152) | - | - | 275 (31.1) | - | - |
| 300 | 250 (127) | - | - | 200 (22.6) | - | - | 300 (152) | - | - | 275 (31.1) | - | - |
| 350 | 250 (127) | - | - | 200 (22.6) | - | - | 300 (152) | - | - | 275 (31.1) | - | - |
| 400 | 250 (127) | - | - | 200 (22.6) | - | - | 300 (152) | - | - | 275 (31.1) | - | - |
| 450 | 250 (127) | - | - | 200 (22.6) | - | - | 300 (152) | - | - | 275 (31.1) | - | - |
| 500 | 250 (127) | - | - | 200 (22.6) | - | - | 300 (152) | - | - | 275 (31.1) | - | - |

Table 39: Constant Torque Controllers, Power Terminal Wire Range: Ground Bar and Ground Lugs

| hp | Ground Bar |  |  |  |  |  | Ground Lugs |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Max Wire Size, AWG (mm²) |  |  | Terminal Torque, lb-in ( $\mathrm{N} \cdot \mathrm{m}$ ) |  |  | Max Wire Size, AWG (mm²) |  |  | Terminal Torque, lb-in ( $\mathrm{N} \cdot \mathrm{m}$ ) |  |  |
|  | 460 V | 230 V | 208 V | 460 V | 230 V | 208 V | 460 V | 230 V | 208 V | 460 V | 230 V | 208 V |
| 1 | 4 (21.15) | 4 (21.15) | 4 (21.15) | 20 (2.26) | 20 (2.26) | 20 (2.26) | 4/0 (107) | 4/0 (107) | 4/0 (107) | 110 (12.43) | 110 (12.43) | 110 (12.43) |
| 2 | 4 (21.15) | 4 (21.15) | 4 (21.15) | 20 (2.26) | 20 (2.26) | 20 (2.26) | 4/0 (107) | 4/0 (107) | 4/0 (107) | 110 (12.43) | 110 (12.43) | 110 (12.43) |
| 3 | 4 (21.15) | 4 (21.15) | 4 (21.15) | 20 (2.26) | 20 (2.26) | 20 (2.26) | 4/0 (107) | 4/0 (107) | 4/0 (107) | 110 (12.43) | 110 (12.43) | 110 (12.43) |
| 5 | 4 (21.15) | 4 (21.15) | 4 (21.15) | 20 (2.26) | 20 (2.26) | 20 (2.26) | 4/0 (107) | 4/0 (107) | 4/0 (107) | 110 (12.43) | 110 (12.43) | 110 (12.43) |
| 7.5 | 4 (21.15) | 4 (21.15) | 4 (21.15) | 20 (2.26) | 20 (2.26) | 20 (2.26) | 4/0 (107) | 4/0 (107) | 4/0 (107) | 110 (12.43) | 110 (12.43) | 110 (12.43) |
| 10 | 4 (21.15) | 4 (21.15) | 4 (21.15) | 20 (2.26) | 20 (2.26) | 20 (2.26) | 4/0 (107) | 4/0 (107) | 4/0 (107) | 110 (12.43) | 110 (12.43) | 110 (12.43) |
| 15 | 4 (21.15) | 1/0 (53.5) | 1/0 (53.5) | 20 (2.26) | 45 (5.1) | 45 (5.1) | 4/0 (107) | 4/0 (107) | 4/0 (107) | 110 (12.43) | 110 (12.43) | 110 (12.43) |
| 20 | 4 (21.15) | 1/0 (53.5) | 1/0 (53.5) | 20 (2.26) | 45 (5.1) | 45 (5.1) | 4/0 (107) | 4/0 (107) | 4/0 (107) | 110 (12.43) | 110 (12.43) | 110 (12.43) |
| 25 | 4 (21.15) | 1/0 (53.5) | 1/0 (53.5) | 20 (2.26) | 45 (5.1) | 45 (5.1) | 4/0 (107) | 4/0 (107) | 4/0 (107) | 110 (12.43) | 110 (12.43) | 110 (12.43) |
| 30 | 1/0 (53.5) | 1/0 (53.5) | 1/0 (53.5) | 45 (5.1) | 45 (5.1) | 45 (5.1) | 4/0 (107) | 350 (177) | 350 (177) | 110 (12.43) | 250 (28.3) | 250 (28.3) |
| 40 | 1/0 (53.5) | 1/0 (53.5) | 1/0 (53.5) | 45 (5.1) | 45 (5.1) | 45 (5.1) | 4/0 (107) | 350 (177) | 350 (177) | 110 (12.43) | 250 (28.3) | 250 (28.3) |
| 50 | 1/0 (53.5) | - | - | 45 (5.1) | - | - | 4/0 (107) | - | - | 110 (12.43) | - | - |
| 60 | 1/0 (53.5) | - | - | 45 (5.1) | - | - | 350 (177) | - | - | 250 (28.3) | - | - |
| 75 | 1/0 (53.5) | - | - | 45 (5.1) | - | - | 350 (177) | - | - | 250 (28.3) | - | - |
| 100 | 1/0 (53.5) | - | - | 45 (5.1) | - | - | 350 (177) | - | - | 250 (28.3) | - | - |
| 125 | 250 (127) | - | - | 200 (22.6) | - | - | 300 (152) | - | - | 275 (31.1) | - | - |
| 150 | 250 (127) | - | - | 200 (22.6) | - | - | 300 (152) | - | - | 275 (31.1) | - | - |
| 200 | 250 (127) | - | - | 200 (22.6) | - | - | 300 (152) | - | - | 275 (31.1) | - | - |
| 250 | 250 (127) | - | - | 200 (22.6) | - | - | 300 (152) | - | - | 275 (31.1) | - | - |
| 300 | 250 (127) | - | - | 200 (22.6) | - | - | 300 (152) | - | - | 275 (31.1) | - | - |
| 350 | 250 (127) | - | - | 200 (22.6) | - | - | 300 (152) | - | - | 275 (31.1) | - | - |
| 400 | 250 (127) | - | - | 200 (22.6) | - | - | 300 (152) | - | - | 275 (31.1) | - | - |
| 450 | 250 (127) | - | - | 200 (22.6) | - | - | 300 (152) | - | - | 275 (31.1) | - | - |

## Control Wiring

Table 40: TB1 Terminal Block Characteristics, 120 Vac Control

| Terminal | Function | Characteristics |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | Control power [2] | 115 Vac (line side) 60 Hz [1] |
| 1 to 2 | Fire/Freezestat interlocks | Provision for user supplied, N.C. fire/freeezestat contact |
| 2 to 3 | User emergency stop | Provision for user supplied, N.C. emergency freewheel stop contact |
| 3 to 4 | Jumper for customer use | Provision for user supplied, N.C. safety interlock contact |
| 4 to 5 | Jumper for customer use | Provision for user supplied, N.C. safety interlock contact |
| 5 to 6 | Check valve sequence contact | N.C. timed open contact from check valve sequence relay |
| 7 to 11 | Stop push button [3] | - |
| 8 to 11 | Start push button (and holding circuit) [3] | - |
| 9A to 8 | User-supplied auto start contact | - |
| 10 to 50 | Auto mode pilot light | - |
| 18 to 32 | Test contact of Test-Normal switch [3] | - |
| 25 to 26 | Normal contact of Test-Normal switch [3] | - |
| 26 to 31 | Isolation contactor coil and bypass contactor N.C. interlock [3] | - |
| 30 to 31 | Bypass pilot light and bypass contactor coil [3] | - |
| 31 to 32 | Line contactor coil [3] | - |
| 33 to 1 | Controller internal relay (AFC trip) N.O. contact | - |
| 35 to 50 | AFC trip pilot light | - |
| 36 to 1 | Controller internal relay (AFC run) N.O. contact | - |
| 36 to 50 | AFC run pilot light and run relay coils (ADRR1, ADRR2) | - |
| 37 to 1 | Controller internal relay (AFC trip) N.C. contact | - |
| 39 thru 42 | Reserved | - |
| 43 to 50 | User-connected seal water solenoid [3] | - |
| 44 to 50 | Factory connection for elapsed time meter [3] | - |
| 45 to 50 | User-connected motor space heater [3] | - |
| 46 to 47 | User-supplied N.C contact from check valve limit switch [3] | - |
| 48 to 49 | Smoke purge relay coil connection (user supplied 115 Vac control) | - |
| 50 | Control power, ground side | - |
| 50 to 1 | Power On pilot light | - |
| 50 to 10 | Auto mode pilot light | - |
| 50 to 12 | Hand mode pilot light | - |
| 50 to 36 | AFC run pilot light | - |
| 50 to 35 | Trip pilot light | - |
| 51 to 53 | ADRR1 N.C. contact for customer use | Standard controller run |
| 52 to 53 | ADRR1 N.O. contact for customer use | Standard controller run |
| 54 to 56 | ADFR1 N.C. contact for customer use | Standard controller trip |
| 55 to 56 | ADFR1 N.O. contact for customer use | Standard controller trip |
| 57 to 58 | ADRR1 N.O. contact for customer use [3] | Optional controller run |
| 59 to 60 | ADFR2 N.C. contact for customer use [3] | Optional controller trip |
| 61 to 62 | Bypass relay N.O. contact for customer use [3] | Optional bypass run |
| 63 to 64 | Auto mode N.O. contact for customer use [3] | Optional auto mode |

1. Wall mount, with standard transformer: 50 VA available. 460 V : $1-25 \mathrm{hp}$ VT, $1-20 \mathrm{hp}$ CT. 208/230 V: $1-10 \mathrm{hp}$ VT/CT. Floor mount, up to 100 hp : 20 VA available. 460 V : $30-100 \mathrm{hp}$ VT, $25-75 \mathrm{hp} \mathrm{CT} .208 / 230 \mathrm{~V}: 15-50 \mathrm{hp}$ VT, $15-40 \mathrm{hp}$ CT. Floor mount, $125-500 \mathrm{hp}$ : 20-50 VA for customer use
2. Approximately 50 VA additional to standard is available with option F10 (additional VA transformer).
3. Available only when this option is provided.

## Notes to Table 41:

1. See the drawings provided separately.
2. All green Phoenix terminals are rated $250 \mathrm{~V}, 12 \mathrm{~A}$.
Max. wire size for all green Phoenix terminals:
1 wire:12 AWG ( $2.5 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ )
2 wires:16 AWG ( $1.5 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ ).
Min. tightening torque:
$4.5 \mathrm{lb}-\mathrm{in}(0.5 \mathrm{~N} \cdot \mathrm{~m})$
All Class 9080 Type GM6 terminals
are rated $600 \mathrm{~V}, 30 \mathrm{~A}$.
Max. wire size for all Type GM6
terminals:
10 AWG ( $2.5 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ )
Tightening torque:
7-8 lb-in ( $0.8-0.9 \mathrm{~N} \cdot \mathrm{~m}$ )
3. Total current of +24 V internal supply is 200 mA . If more current is required, an external supply must be used.
4. $0-20 \mathrm{~mA}, \mathrm{X}-\mathrm{Y}$ programmable with graphic display terminal, or $0-10 \mathrm{Vdc}$
5. Provided only with MOD Z10.

NOTE: Terminal connections are enabled only when the corresponding option is selected.

Table 41: Terminal Block Characteristics, 24 Vdc Control (1-100 hp: TB2; 100-500 hp: Black Terminals)

| Terminal [1, 2] | Function | Characteristics |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| O [5] | +24 V (+24 V control supply) | Minimum: 19 V ; Maximum: 30 V ; $\mathrm{I}=200 \mathrm{~mA}$ maximum [3] |
| $\mathrm{N}^{\text {[5] }}$ | +24 V (common) |  |
| B | LI3 (Logic Input 3) programmed for reference switching Auto/Manual | $\begin{aligned} & 24 \mathrm{Vdc}, 10 \mathrm{~mA} \\ & \text { State } 0: \mathrm{V}<5 \mathrm{~V} \text {; State } 1: \mathrm{V}>11 \mathrm{~V} ; \mathrm{Z}=3.5 \mathrm{k} \Omega \end{aligned}$ |
| C | LI4 (Logic Input 4) programmed for trip reset. Communication option programmed for forced local. | $24 \mathrm{Vdc}, 10 \mathrm{~mA}$ <br> State 0: V<5 V; State 1: V>11 V; Z = $3.5 \mathrm{k} \Omega$ |
| D | LI2 (Logic Input 2) is programmed for Freewheel Stop on bypass. Without bypass it is not assigned. | $24 \mathrm{Vdc}, 10 \mathrm{~mA}$ <br> State 0: V<5 V; State 1: V>11 V; Z = $3.5 \mathrm{k} \Omega$ |
| E | LI1 (Logic Input 1) Run Forward | $24 \mathrm{Vdc}, 10 \mathrm{~mA}$ State 0: V<5 V; State 1: V>11 V; Z = $3.5 \mathrm{k} \Omega$ |
| F | Line contactor auxiliary contact or jumper (if used) | $24 \mathrm{Vdc}, 10 \mathrm{~mA}$ <br> State 0: V<5 V; State 1: V>11 V; Z = $3.5 \mathrm{k} \Omega$ |
| G1 (S2+) | Al2 (Analog Input 2: Speed Reference Current or Voltage) | $\begin{aligned} & 4-20 \mathrm{~mA}[4], Z=250 \Omega \\ & 0-10 \mathrm{Vdc}, Z=30 \mathrm{k} \Omega \end{aligned}$ |
| H | +10 V Reference Supply. | $10 \mathrm{Vdc}, \mathrm{l}=10 \mathrm{~mA}$ maximum |
| I or W | AI1+ (Analog Input 1: Speed Reference Voltage) | $\begin{aligned} & 0-10 \mathrm{Vdc}, \mathrm{Z}=30 \mathrm{k} \Omega \\ & \text { Al1- (jumpered to } \mathrm{J} 3 \text { ) } \end{aligned}$ |
| $J$ (S3) | COM (Speed Reference Common) | 0 V |
| S1 | Shield |  |

## Table 42: M-Flex User Terminal Connections

| TB1 | Option | User Terminals |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 120 Vac (for additional VA use) | F10 |  |  | 50 |
| Safety Interlocks | standard |  |  | 2 |
| Emergency Stop (door) | T10 |  |  | 3 |
| Emergency Stop (user) | standard |  |  | 4 |
| Open | standard |  |  | 5 |
| AUTO Start Contacts | A07,B07,E07,F07 |  |  | 9 |
| Seal Water Solenoid | V10 |  |  | 50 |
| Motor Space Heater | U10 |  |  | 50 |
| Check Valve N.C. Contact | W10 |  |  | 47 |
| N.C. AFC Trip Contact | standard |  |  | 56 |
| N.O. AFC Trip Contact | standard |  |  | 56 |
| N.C. AFC Run Contact | standard |  |  | 53 |
| N.O. AFC Run Contact | standard |  |  | 53 |
| SPR Coil | E10 |  |  | 49 |
| N.O. Bypass Run Contact | M10 |  |  | 62 |
| N.O. Auto Mode Contact | O10 |  |  | 64 |
| N.C. AFC Trip Contact | L10 |  |  | 60 |
| N.O. AFC Run Contact | K10 |  |  | 58 |
| TB2 | Option |  | ser Termina |  |
| 24 Vdc | Z10 | O (+) | N (-) |  |
| Speed Potentiometer Input | standard | H (+10V) | 1 (IN) | J (S3) Com |
| 4-20 mA Input | standard | G1 (S2+) IN | J (S3) Com |  |
| 0-10 V Input | J10 | G1 (S2+) IN | J (S3) Com |  |
| Analog Output \# 1 | standard | AO1 | J (S3) Com |  |
| Extended I/O Card | Option |  | ser Termin |  |
| Analog Output \# 2 | H09 | AO2 (or AO3) | Com |  |

## Initial Startup Procedure

## 4. DANGER

## HAZARD OF ELECTRIC SHOCK, EXPLOSION, OR ARC FLASH

Before working on this equipment, turn off all power supplying it and perform the bus voltage measurement procedure on page 61.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

## A DANGER

## HAZARD OF ELECTRIC SHOCK

- Properly ground the controller panel before applying power.
- Close and secure the enclosure door before applying power.
- Certain adjustments and test procedures require that power be applied to this controller. Extreme caution must be exercised as hazardous voltages exist. The enclosure door must be closed and secured while turning on power or starting and stopping this controller.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

## A DANGER

## UNQUALIFIED PERSONNEL

- This equipment must be installed and serviced only by qualified personnel.
- Qualified personnel performing diagnostics or troubleshooting that requires electrical conductors to be energized must comply with NFPA 70 E - Standard for Electrical Safety Requirements for Employee Workplaces and OSHA Standards - 29 CFR Part 1910 Subpart S Electrical.

Electric shock will result in death or serious injury.

The M-Flex controller has been configured for the installed options and tested at the factory. Minor adjustments to complete the field installation may be required based upon the application requirements. This initial startup procedure should be followed step by step. In case of difficulty, refer to Section 4, Maintenance and Support, beginning on 103.

A door-mounted or remote-mounted graphic display terminal, or a computer loaded with SoMove ${ }^{\text {TM }}$ software, must be used to perform the initial start-up procedure.

## A WARNING <br> UNINTENDED CONFIGURATION CHANGES <br> - Changing the macro configurations or installing a new option card reconfigures the controller to factory settings. <br> - The controller configuration must be reinstalled. <br> Failure to follow these instructions can result in death or serious injury.

After replacing the power converter or installing any plug-in option card, the programming parameters must be set as listed in the elementary diagram that corresponds to the options ordered. See the diagrams provided with the controller.

In addition, after installing any plug-in option card for the first time, previously-saved parameters downloaded from the keypad or PC software will not be correct because they do not include the additional parameters available with the card. The analog card parameters must be set as listed in the elementary diagram that corresponds to the options ordered. See the diagrams provided with the controller.

## Start-Up Procedure

## Step 1: Checking the Enclosure Components and Connections

With all incoming power removed, make the following equipment checks:

- Step 1: Check the enclosure components and connections (see page 78).
- Step 2: Provide motor overload protection and thermal protection (see page 79).
- Step 3: Test motor rotation (see page 80).
- Step 4: If your controller has a bypass, test the motor rotation in bypass mode (see page 81).
- Step 5: Check the graphic display terminal high speed, low speed, acceleration, and deceleration settings (see page 81).
A. Verify that all equipment disconnects are open.
B. Set the Hand-Off-Auto selector switch (controller mounted or remote mounted) to Off and the AFC-Off-Bypass switch (if used) to Off.
C. Set the speed potentiometer (controller mounted or remote mounted) to its minimum setting (full counterclockwise position).
D. Open the enclosure door. Turn the circuit breaker and handle assembly to the Off position as shown in Figure 17 on page 49, and unscrew the door thumbscrews or quarter-turn fasteners.
E. Check the wiring of the input power ground, motor ground, speed potentiometer (if remote mounted), and Hand-Off-Auto circuit connections (if remote mounted). See the control circuit elementary diagrams provided separately, and the power circuit descriptions starting on page 92, for wiring diagrams of the remote control operators.
F. When using the bypass circuit, check that the motor conductors are wired to the T1, T2, and T3 terminals of the overload relay. When using the power circuit without bypass, ensure that the motor conductors are wired either to $\mathrm{T} 1 / \mathrm{U}, \mathrm{T} 2 / \mathrm{V}$, and $\mathrm{T} 3 / \mathrm{W}$ of the power converter, or to the T1, T2, and T3 distribution block below the power converter.
G. Follow the "Circuit Breaker Trip Adjustment Procedure" on page 83.
H. Using a voltmeter set at the 1000 Vac scale, verify that the incoming line voltage at the line side of the disconnecting means is within $\pm 10 \%$ of the input voltage rating on the controller nameplate.


## Step 2: Providing Motor Overload Protection and Thermal Protection

Figure 30: Overload Relay Dial


NOTE: The LR2D1516 overload relay is shown. Your dial setting range may be different.

## Overload Relay Adjustment

A. If the controller includes a bypass option for running the motor across the line, set the overload relay dial (on the load side of the bypass contactor) to the full load ampere rating on the nameplate of the connected motor. See Figure 30.
B. Close and secure the enclosure door by tightening the thumbscrews. Close the equipment disconnect means. The Power On pilot light (if used) illuminates.
C. Provide power by closing the disconnect.
D. Press ESC on the graphic display terminal until the Main menu is displayed and the Drive menu is highlighted. Press the keypad knob (ENT) twice. The Simply Start menu is displayed.
E. Rotate the keypad knob clockwise until Mot. Therm Current is highlighted. Press ENT.
F. Rotate the keypad knob until the display indicates the correct MFLC. Press ENT.
The controller is now calibrated to provide motor overload protection. To return to the monitor screen, press ESC three times.

Refer to the Programming Manual on the CD supplied with the power converter.

Always verify that the overload relay setting does not exceed the motor full load current or rated controller current found on the M-Flex nameplate, whichever is less.

Table 43 provides the range of adjustment for overload relays according to horsepower rating and voltage. Contact your Schneider Electric representative if the overload range or adjustment does not meet the intended application.

Table 43: Overload Relay Adjustment Range For Full Voltage Bypass Operation

| $\mathbf{H P}$ | $\mathbf{2 0 8} \mathbf{~ V}$ | $\mathbf{2 3 0} \mathbf{V}$ | $\mathbf{4 6 0} \mathbf{~ V}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | $4-6$ | $4-6$ | $1.6-2.5$ |
| 2 | $7-10$ | $5.5-8$ | $2.5-4$ |
| 3 | $9-13$ | $9-13$ | $4-6$ |
| 5 | $12-18$ | $12-18$ | $5.5-8$ |
| 7.5 | $23-32$ | $16-24$ | $9-13$ |
| 10 | $23-32$ | $23-32$ | $12-18$ |
| 15 | $37-50$ | $37-50$ | $16-24$ |
| 20 | $48-65$ | $48-65$ | $23-32$ |
| 25 | $63-80$ | $63-80$ | $30-40$ |
| 30 | $60-100$ | $60-100$ | $37-50$ |
| 40 | $90-150$ | $90-150$ | $48-65$ |
| 50 | $90-150$ | $90-150$ | $55-70$ |
| 60 | - | - | $60-100$ |
| 75 | - | - | $90-150$ |
| 100 | - | - | $90-150[1]$ |
| 125 | - | - | $132-220[1]$ |
| 150 | - | - | $132-220[1]$ |
| 200 | - | - | $200-330[1]$ |

[^3]
## ACAUTION

## OVERHEATED MOTOR

- This controller does not provide direct thermal protection for the motor.
- Use of a thermal sensor in the motor may be required for protection at all speeds or load conditions.
- Consult the motor manufacturer for the thermal capability of the motor when it is operated over the desired speed range.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in injury or equipment damage.

## Step 3: Testing Motor Rotation

NOTE: The settings listed in this procedure are suitable for most applications. If your application requires different operating characteristics, refer to the Programming Manual on the CD supplied with the power converter, for more information.

## Correcting Motor Rotation

A. Set the AFC-Off-Bypass selector switch (if used) to AFC, the NormalTest selector switch (if used) to Normal, and Hand-Off-Auto selector switch to Hand (push Start if the Start/Stop push buttons are used).
B. Slowly turn the speed potentiometer clockwise to accelerate the motor. Check the direction of motor rotation.

- If correct, proceed to Step 4: Testing Motor Rotation in Bypass Mode below.
- If incorrect, stop the controller. Remove all power! Correct the motor rotation.


## A WARNING <br> HAZARDOUS MOVING PARTS <br> Before starting the controller, ensure that personnel are clear of the motor and its connected load and that the motor and load are ready to run. <br> Failure to follow these instructions can result in death or serious injury.

## motor rotation.

## A DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRIC SHOCK, EXPLOSION, OR ARC FLASH
Turn off all power supplying this equipment and perform the bus voltage measurement procedure on page 61 before proceeding.
Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

To correct the direction of motor rotation:
A. Reverse any two motor leads located on the device terminals marked T1, T2, or T3.
B. Reset the speed potentiometer to minimum speed (fully counterclockwise). Close and secure the enclosure door, then reapply power and restart the controller.

Step 4: Testing Motor Rotation in Bypass Mode

## Correcting Motor Rotation in Bypass Mode

C. Slowly turn the speed potentiometer clockwise to accelerate the motor. Check the direction of motor rotation.

- If correct, this completes the controller mode motor rotation check.
- If incorrect, repeat Steps A-C until correct.
A. Set the AFC-Off-Bypass selector switch (if used) to Off, leaving the Hand-Off-Auto selector switch in the Hand position.
B. Momentarily set the AFC-Off-Bypass selector switch to Bypass to check the direction of motor rotation, then return it immediately to the Off position.
- If the direction of motor rotation is correct, proceed to Step 5: Checking the Graphic Display Settings below.
- If incorrect, stop the controller. Remove all power! Correct the motor rotation.

NOTE: If the controller circuit breaker trips during this test, a higher trip setting may be required. Refer to "Circuit Breaker Trip Adjustment Procedure" on page 83.

## A DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRIC SHOCK, EXPLOSION, OR ARC FLASH
Turn off all power supplying this equipment and perform the bus voltage measurement procedure on page 61 before proceeding.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

To correct the direction of motor rotation:
C. Reverse any two incoming leads to the controller input marked L1, L2, or L3.
D. Momentarily set the AFC-Off-Bypass selector switch to Bypass to check the direction of motor rotation, then return it immediately to the Off position.

- If correct, this completes the bypass mode, motor rotation check.
- If incorrect, repeat Steps C and D until correct.
A. Check the High Speed (HSP) setting (maximum motor speed setting).
a. Press ESC on the graphic display terminal until Main Menu is displayed and Drive Menu is highlighted. Press the keypad knob (ENT) twice. The Simply Start menu is displayed.
b. Rotate the keypad knob clockwise until High Speed is highlighted. Press ENT.
c. Rotate the keypad knob until the display indicates the maximum output frequency required for the application (factory default is 60 Hz ). Press ENT.

The controller HSP setting is now complete.
Refer to the Programming Manual on the CD supplied with the power converter.
B. Check the Low Speed (LSP) setting (minimum motor speed setting).
a. Continuing from Step A above, rotate the keypad knob counterclockwise until Low Speed is highlighted. Press ENT.
b. Rotate the keypad knob until the display indicates the minimum output frequency required for the application (preset value is 3 Hz ; factory default is 0 Hz ). Press ENT.
The controller LSP setting is now complete. To return to the monitor screen, press ESC three times.
Refer to the Programming Manual on the CD supplied with the power converter.
C. The application may require changing the setting of Acceleration (ACC) and Deceleration (dEC) times. Preset value is 10 s . If the power converter has been replaced or reset to factory defaults, the value will be 3 s . To change the setting:
a. Press ESC on the graphic display terminal until Main Menu is displayed and Drive Menu is highlighted. Press the keypad knob (ENT) twice. The Simply Start menu is displayed.
b. Rotate the keypad knob clockwise until Acceleration is highlighted. Press ENT.
c. Rotate the keypad knob until the display indicates the acceleration time required for the application. Press ENT.
d. Rotate the keypad knob counter-clockwise until Deceleration is highlighted. Press ENT.
e. Rotate the keypad knob until the display indicates the deceleration time required for the application. Press ENT.

The controller acceleration and deceleration time settings are now complete. To return to the monitor screen, press ESC three times.

Circuit Breaker Trip Adjustment Procedure

For Type HLL, PLL, and MJL circuit breakers, no adjustments are required. For Type JLL, KCL, LIL, LLL, or MHL circuit breakers, set the breaker dial to the magnetic trip setting shown in Tables 44-49. Circuit breakers including electronic trip units may require additional adjustment. Refer to the circuit breaker instruction bulletin for making adjustments to circuit breaker trip unit settings.

Table 44: Short-Circuit Protection-460 V, Variable Torque

| hp | 460 V, VT | Fixed Trip Unit Short-Circuit Protection |  | Adjustable Trip Unit Short-Circuit Protection |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  |  |  |  | Controller Only | Controller with Bypass |
|  |  | Hold (A) | Trip (A) |  |  | Set (A) | Set (A) |
| 1 | HLL36015 | 350 | 750 | - | - | - | - |
| 2 | HLL36015 | 350 | 750 | - | - | - | - |
| 3 | HLL36015 | 350 | 750 | - | - | - | - |
| 5 | HLL36015 | 350 | 750 | - | - | - | - |
| 7.5 | HLL36025 | 350 | 750 | - | - | - | - |
| 10 | HLL36035 | 400 | 850 | - | - | - | - |
| 15 | HLL36050 | 400 | 850 | - | - | - | - |
| 20 | HLL36060 | 800 | 1450 | - | - | - | - |
| 25 | HLL36080 | 800 | 1450 | - | - | - | - |
| 30 | HLL36100 | 900 | 1700 | - | - | - | - |
| 40 | HLL36125 | 900 | 1700 | - | - | - | - |
| 50 | HLL36150 | 900 | 1700 | - | - | - | - |
| 60 | JLL36175 | - | - | 875 | 1750 | 876 | 1001 |
| 75 | JLL36225 | - | - | 1125 | 2250 | 1125 | 1248 |
| 100 | JLL36250 | - | - | 1250 | 2500 | 1447 | 1612 |
| 125 | JLL36250 | - | - | 1250 | 2500 | 1745 | 2028 |
| 125 | KCL34250 | - | - | 1250 | 2500 | 1745 | 2028 |
| 150 | LIL36300 | - | - | 1500 | 3200 | 2084 | 2340 |
|  | LLL36400U31X | - | - | 600 | 4800 | 2084 | 2340 |
| 200 | LIL36400 | - | - | 2000 | 3200 | 2498 | 3120 |
|  | LLL36400U31X | - | - | 600 | 4800 | 2498 | 3120 |
| 250 | LIL36400 | - | - | 2000 | 3200 | 3012 | 3200 |
|  | LLL36400U31X | - | - | 600 | 4800 | 3012 | 3926 |
| 300 | MHL36600 [1] | - | - | 3000 | 6000 | 4017 | 4693 |
| 350 | MHL36600 [1] | - | - | 3000 | 6000 | 4122 | 5382 |
| 400 | MHL36700 [1] | - | - | 3500 | 7000 | 4662 | 6201 |
| 450 | MHL36700 [1] | - | - | 3500 | 7000 | 5221 | 6695 |
| 500 | MHL36800 [1] | - | - | 4000 | 8000 | 5857 | 7670 |

[^4]Table 45: Short-Circuit Protection-230 V, Variable Torque

| hp | 230 V, VT | Fixed Trip Unit Short-Circuit Protection |  | Adjustable Trip Unit Short-Circuit Protection |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Circuit Breaker |  |  |  |  | Controller Only | Controller with Bypass |
|  |  | Hold (A) | Trip (A) |  |  | Set (A) | Set (A) |
| 1 | HLL36015 | 350 | 750 | - | - | - | - |
| 2 | HLL36015 | 350 | 750 | - | - | - | - |
| 3 | HLL36025 | 350 | 750 | - | - | - | - |
| 5 | HLL36040 | 400 | 850 | - | - | - | - |
| 7.5 | HLL36060 | 800 | 1450 | - | - | - | - |
| 10 | HLL36070 | 800 | 1450 | - | - | - | - |
| 15 | HLL36110 | 900 | 1700 | - | - | - | - |
| 20 | HLL36125 | 900 | 1700 | - | - | - | - |
| 25 | JLL36175 | - | - | 875 | 1750 | 875 | 884 |
| 30 | JLL36200 | - | - | 1000 | 2000 | 1000 | 1040 |
| 40 | JLL36250 | - | - | 1250 | 2500 | 1250 | 1352 |
| 50 | JLL36250 | - | - | 1250 | 2500 | 1511 | 1690 |

Table 46: Short-Circuit Protection-208 V, Variable Torque

| hp | 208 V, VT | Fixed Trip Unit Short-Circuit Protection |  | Adjustable Trip Unit Short-Circuit Protection |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  |  |  |  | Controller Only | Controller with Bypass |
|  | Circuit Breaker | Hold (A) | Trip (A) |  |  | Set (A) | Set (A) |
| 1 | HLL36015 | 350 | 750 | - | - | - | - |
| 2 | HLL36015 | 350 | 750 | - | - | - | - |
| 3 | HLL36025 | 350 | 750 | - | - | - | - |
| 5 | HLL36040 | 400 | 850 | - | - | - | - |
| 7.5 | HLL36060 | 800 | 1450 | - | - | - | - |
| 10 | HLL36070 | 800 | 1450 | - | - | - | - |
| 15 | HLL36110 | 900 | 1700 | - | - | - | - |
| 20 | HLL36125 | 900 | 1700 | - | - | - | - |
| 25 | JLL36175 | - | - | 875 | 1750 | 875 | 973 |
| 30 | JLL36200 | - | - | 1000 | 2000 | 1000 | 1144 |
| 40 | JLL36250 | - | - | 1250 | 2500 | 1347 | 1482 |
| 50 | JLL36250 | - | - | 1250 | 2500 | 1660 | 1860 |

Table 47: Short-Circuit Protection-460 V, Constant Torque

| hp | 460 V, CT | Fixed Trip Unit Short-Circuit Protection |  | Adjustable Trip Unit Short-Circuit Protection |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  |  |  |  | Controller Only | Controller with Bypass |
|  |  | Hold (A) | Trip (A) |  |  | Set (A) | Set (A) |
| 1 | HLL36015 | 350 | 750 | - | - | - | - |
| 2 | HLL36015 | 350 | 750 | - | - | - | - |
| 3 | HLL36015 | 350 | 750 | - | - | - | - |
| 5 | HLL36025 | 350 | 750 | - | - | - | - |
| 7.5 | HLL36040 | 400 | 850 | - | - | - | - |
| 10 | HLL36050 | 400 | 850 | - | - | - | - |
| 15 | HLL36070 | 800 | 1450 | - | - | - | - |
| 20 | HLL36100 | 900 | 1700 | - | - | - | - |
| 25 | HLL36090 | 800 | 1450 | - | - | - | - |
| 30 | HLL36100 | 900 | 1700 | - | - | - | - |
| 40 | HLL36125 | 900 | 1700 | - | - | - | - |
| 50 | HLL36150 | 900 | 1700 | - | - | - | - |
| 60 | JLL36200 | - | - | 1000 | 2000 | 1000 | 1001 |
| 75 | JLL36225 | - | - | 1125 | 2250 | 1125 | 1248 |
| 100 | JLL36250 | - | - | 1250 | 2500 | 1455 | 1612 |
| 100 | KCL34250 | - | - | 1250 | 2500 | 1455 | 1612 |
| 125 | LIL36300 | - | - | 1500 | 3200 | 1716 | 2028 |
|  | LLL36400U31X | - | - | 600 | 4800 | 1716 | 2028 |
| 150 | LIL36300 | - | - | 1500 | 3200 | 2098 | 2340 |
|  | LLL36400U31X | - | - | 600 | 4800 | 2098 | 2340 |
| 200 | LIL36400 | - | - | 2000 | 3200 | 2506 | 3120 |
|  | LLL36400U31X | - | - | 600 | 4800 | 2506 | 3120 |
| 250 | LIL36400 [1] | - | - | 2000 | 3200 | 3026 | 3926 |
|  | LLL36400U31X | - | - | 600 | 4800 | 3026 | 3926 |
| 300 | MHL36600 [1] | - | - | 3000 | 6000 | 3758 | 4693 |
| 350 | MHL36600 [1] | - | - | 3000 | 6000 | 4124 | 5382 |
| 400 | MHL36700 [1] | - | - | 3500 | 7000 | 4688 | 6201 |
| 450 | MHL36800 [1] | - | - | 4000 | 8000 | 5240 | 6695 |
| ${ }^{1}$ Fused with Class J time-delay fuses. Refer to Table 61 on page 112 for details. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

Table 48: Short-Circuit Protection-230 V, Constant Torque

|  | 30 V, CT | Fixed | ip Unit |  | Adjusta | le Trip Unit Short-C | cuit Protection |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | Short-Circ | it Protection |  |  | Controller Only | Controller with Bypass |
|  |  | Hold (A) | Trip (A) | Low (A) | High (A) | Set (A) | Set (A) |
| 1 | HLL36015 | 350 | 750 | - | - | - | - |
| 2 | HLL36025 | 350 | 750 | - | - | - | - |
| 3 | HLL36035 | 400 | 850 | - | - | - | - |
| 5 | HLL36060 | 800 | 1450 | - | - | - | - |
| 7.5 | HLL36080 | 800 | 1450 | - | - | - | - |
| 10 | HLL36110 | 900 | 1700 | - | - | - | - |
| 15 | HLL36110 | 900 | 1700 | - | - | - | - |
| 20 | HLL36150 | 900 | 1700 | - | - | - | - |
| 25 | JLL36175 | - | - | 875 | 1750 | 875 | 884 |
| 30 | JLL36200 | - | - | 1000 | 2000 | 1000 | 1040 |
| 40 | JLL36250 | - | - | 1250 | 2500 | 1250 | 1352 |

Table 49: Short-Circuit Protection-208 V, Constant Torque

| hp | 208 V, CT | Fixed Trip Unit Short-Circuit Protection |  | Adjustable Trip Unit Short-Circuit Protection |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  |  |  |  | Controller Only | Controller with Bypass |
|  |  | Hold (A) | Trip (A) |  |  | Set (A) | Set (A) |
| 1 | HLL36015 | 350 | 750 | - | - | - | - |
| 2 | HLL36025 | 350 | 750 | - | - | - | - |
| 3 | HLL36035 | 400 | 850 | - | - | - | - |
| 5 | HLL36060 | 800 | 1450 | - | - | - | - |
| 7.5 | HLL36080 | 800 | 1450 | - | - | - | - |
| 10 | HLL36110 | 900 | 1700 | - | - | - | - |
| 15 | HLL36110 | 900 | 1700 | - | - | - | - |
| 20 | HLL36150 | 900 | 1700 | - | - | - | - |
| 25 | JLL36175 | - | - | 875 | 1750 | 875 | 973 |
| 30 | JLL36200 | - | - | 1000 | 2000 | 1000 | 1144 |
| 40 | JLL36250 | - | - | 1250 | 2500 | 1360 | 1482 |

Start-Up Checklist

Table 50 on page 87 is an initial start-up checklist for customer use. It is recommended that you store this information with the controller.

## Table 50: Controller Start-Up Checklist

|  | Yes | No | N/A |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Equipment Location |  |  |  |
| 1. Is (Are) the drive(s) mounted in its (their) permanent location(s)? |  |  |  |
| 2. Is the work area around the drive(s) accessible? |  |  |  |
| 3. Does the work facility have safety provisions such as first aid, fire extinguishers, etc.? |  |  |  |
| Power Connections (Line Side) |  |  |  |
| 1. Is (Are) the proper sized incoming power connection(s) installed, completely terminated, and properly tightened? |  |  |  |
| 2. Are the incoming power leads in the standard (A-B-C) rotation pattern? |  |  |  |
| 3. Have proper grounding practices per NEC codes been followed? |  |  |  |
| Motor Connections (Load Side) |  |  |  |
| 1. Is (Are) the proper motor(s) installed for each controller? |  |  |  |
| 2. Is (Are) the motor lead(s) completely terminated and properly tightened to the output of each controller? |  |  |  |
| 3. If an iso/bypass application is part of the installation, are the contactors mounted, wired, and properly tightened? |  |  |  |
| 4. Is each AFC output power cable in an independent conduit with respect to other AFC output cables? |  |  |  |
| 5. Can the motor be run at full speed in Bypass mode? |  |  |  |
| Motor Load Device |  |  |  |
| 1. Is the proper load device installed and ready? |  |  |  |
| 2. Is the desired motor rotation known? |  |  |  |
| 3. Is the load properly coupled to the motor shaft? |  |  |  |
| 4. At time of start-up, can the application provide maximum motor loading? |  |  |  |
| Control Circuit Wiring |  |  |  |
| 1. Is all local and remote control wiring properly identified, securely terminated, and properly tightened? |  |  |  |
| 2. Are the low level analog signals separated from control and power wiring? |  |  |  |
| 3. Was shielded cable used for all analog signals, and is the shield wire grounded at the AFC end only? |  |  |  |
| 4. Is control wiring separated from the power wiring? |  |  |  |
| Other User Interfaces |  |  |  |
| 1. Is (Are) any remote commissioning terminal(s) with any interconnect cable(s) operational and available? |  |  |  |
| 2. Are any of your serial communication links ready for AFC operational use? |  |  |  |
| 3. Are accurate control and power wiring diagrams available at the start-up location? |  |  |  |
| 4. Are specific drive settings known for each controller (e.g., Min/Max speed, Acc/Dec Time, etc.)? |  |  |  |
| Availability Of Equipment |  |  |  |
| 1. Will the equipment be available to be energized and de-energized on the date of start-up? |  |  |  |
| 2. Will the process/load be available to be exercised? |  |  |  |
| Authorized Personnel |  |  |  |
| 1. Will the person(s) responsible for the entire process be available to verify final operation? |  |  |  |
| 2. Will all necessary union trade personnel be ready and available if they need to be present when Schneider Electric Company personnel are working on the equipment? |  |  |  |
| Special Requirements: Please list any specific concerns/comments |  |  |  |
| For enclosed controllers with bypass, are the bypass fuses installed? |  |  |  |
| For bypass controllers with NEMA contactors, are the overload elements properly selected to the motor nameplate information and installed? |  |  |  |

## Customer Readiness Acknowledgment

I/We have verified that all checklist questions have been answered. All questions with a Yes response indicate a ready state for the start-up to be efficient and successful. Explanation(s) for any question with a No response is listed in the Special Requirements section above.

## CUSTOMER NAME:

COMPANY NAME:
PHONE:
$\qquad$

SIGNATURE: $\qquad$
FAX: ( $\qquad$ ) DATE: $\qquad$

## Section 3-Circuit Descriptions and Options

## Introduction

## Terminal Command Versus Keypad Command Operation

This section describes basic sequences of operation for the three types of pre-engineered power circuit configurations and available options. The options are:

- Power Circuit W: Drive Only (see page 92)
- Power Circuit Y: Integrated Bypass (see page 93)
- Power Circuit Z: Barriered Bypass (see page 93)

For factory and/or user-supplied pilot devices and controls to be recognized, the M-Flex controller is factory-configured to operate from the terminal strip. Changing settings in Menu 1.6 COMMAND disables certain power converter logic inputs. Factory and user-provided control devices are ignored. For this reason, do not operate the controller with Menu 1.6 settings different from those shown in the ATV61 or ATV71 Factory Configuration tables.

Before re-programming inputs, outputs, torque types, or control types:

- Consult the factory configuration listing on the applicable control circuit diagram provided separately.
- Refer to the Programming Manual supplied with the power converter.
- Refer to the instruction bulletin for the selected option, as specified in Table 51.

Table 51: Option Card Bulletins

| Bulletin No. | Title | Option |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\begin{aligned} & \hline 1755869 \\ & 30072-451-27 \\ & 30072-451-43 \end{aligned}$ | Modbus Plus Card, VW3A3302 <br> Supplementary Instructions for ATV71 Option Cards Addendum to ATV71 Modbus Plus Card VW3A3302 | A09 |
| $\begin{aligned} & \hline 1755867 \\ & 30072-451-27 \end{aligned}$ | Modbus/Uni-Telway ${ }^{\text {™ }}$ Card, VW3A3303 <br> Supplementary Instructions for ATV71 Option Cards | B09 |
| 1754480 | Option Card (Metasys ${ }^{\circledR}$ N2 Card, VW3A3318) | C09 |
| AAV69931 | Ethernet Modbus TCP/IP Card, VW3A3310D | D09 |
| 1765273 | Option Card (LonWorks ${ }^{\circledR}$ Card, VW3A3312) | E09 |
| $\begin{aligned} & \hline 1755877 \\ & 30072-451-27 \\ & 30072-451-44 \end{aligned}$ | DeviceNet ${ }^{\text {TM }}$ Card, VW3A3309 <br> Supplementary Instructions for ATV71 Option Cards Addendum to ATV71 DeviceNet ${ }^{\text {TM }}$ Card | F09 |
| $\begin{aligned} & 1755873 \\ & 30072-451-27 \\ & 30072-451-45 \end{aligned}$ | Profibus DP Card, VW3A3307 <br> Supplementary Instructions for ATV71 Option Cards Addendum to ATV71 Profibus ${ }^{\text {TM }}$ DP VW3A3307 | G09 |
| - | I/O Extension Card, VW3A3202: <br> Refer to the Installation Manual. See Table 2 on page 9. | H09 |
| BBV10543 | Option Card (Apogee P1 Card, VW3A3314) | J09 |
| 1765274 | Option Card (BACnet Card, VW3A3319) | K09 |
| $\begin{aligned} & \hline 1755871 \\ & 30072-451-27 \end{aligned}$ | Interbus Card, VW3A3304 <br> Supplementary Instructions for ATV71 Option Cards | L09 |
| $\begin{aligned} & \hline 1755883 \\ & 30072-451-27 \end{aligned}$ | Standard Fipio Card, VW3A3311 <br> Supplementary Instructions for ATV71 Option Cards | M09 |
| 1629225 | Bluetooth USB Adapter, VW3A8115 | O09 or Q09 |
| 30072-451-39 | Modbus Bluetooth Adapter, VW3A8114 | P09 or Q09 |

NOTE: Changing certain factory settings will affect the performance of the M-Flex controller.

## A WARNING

## UNINTENDED EQUIPMENT OPERATION

- The controller has been factory-programmed. Alteration of factory programming may create incompatibilities with the supplied controller configuration.
- Read and understand the Programming Manual on the CD supplied with the power converter, as well as the programming information found in the applicable control circuit elementary diagrams provided with each controller.
- If the power converter unit or the main control board of the power converter is replaced, or if any option cards are field installed, the power converter must be re-programmed according to the programming instructions found in the applicable control circuit elementary diagrams provided with each controller.
Failure to follow these instructions can result in death or serious injury.

NOTE: The factory program can be saved in the graphic display terminal. Refer to the Programming Manual for information on saving and retrieving factory settings. ${ }^{1}$

## Graphic Display Terminal Operation

Trip Reset

## Control Circuit Sequencing and Operation

## Run Command Relay (RCR)

The graphic display terminal is for programming and display. The FWD/REV, Run, and Stop/Reset buttons are not for controller primary operation. Use the operators located on the front of the controller door to command the AFC and Bypass modes of operation.

When a communication option is selected, the controller trip reset feature is removed. If Start/Stop commands are not sent over the communication system network, you may choose to activate the trip reset function by assigning trip reset to LI4.

The following descriptions do not represent all possible combinations of standard control options. Order engineered (OE) options are available for other possible combinations.

The RCR closes if all safety interlocks are closed and the controller has been commanded to run. A run command initiates when:

- The HOA selector switch is in the Hand position.
- The HOA selector switch is in the Hand position and the Start push button has been pressed.
- The H-O-A selector switch is in the Auto position and a user-supplied start contact is closed.
- The C-A-O-H selector switch is in the Communication position, allowing the communication relay to close, and a start command has been transmitted over a digital communication link.
- The start push button has been pushed.

[^5]
# Auxiliary Run Command Relay (ARCR) 

Auxiliary Drive Run Relay (ADRR1)

Auxiliary Drive Run Relay (ADRR2)

ARCR is in parallel with the RCR and provides additional contacts to prevent transfer to bypass when the controller has power applied and is in a trip state, if not commanded to run. If a line contactor is used and the customer-supplied interlock circuits are not closed, the ARCR disconnects line power from the controller via control of the line contactor and isolation contactor.

If the power converter is running, ADRR1 provides run contacts, and when bypass is supplied, circuit operation of the power converter isolation contactor. This relay is controlled by a programmable relay (R2), internal to the controller, programmed for Drive Run. One N.O. and one N.C. run contact from ADRR1 are provided as standard for customer use. If option K 10 is supplied, one additional N.O. contact is wired to the user terminal block TB1.

ADRR2 is in parallel with ADRR1 and provides additional contacts for operation of the motor elapsed time meter (option S10) and seal water solenoid (option V10), when the controller is operating. ADRR2 contacts provide operation of the motor space heater relays (option U10) when the controller is not running but power to the controller is on. If the contact from the check valve limit switch is closed and the controller is running the motor, ADRR2 contacts also provide actuation of the check valve sequence timer (option W10).

ADFR1 provides trip contacts for initiating controller shutdown. If the controller detects a trip condition, it illuminates the drive trip pilot light. This relay is controlled by a programmable relay (R1), internal to the controller, when a line contactor is supplied. A timing head mounted on the RCR holds in the ADFR1 for five seconds. This provides time for the input line contactor (if used) to close and eliminates a momentary false power loss trip indication. ADFR1 provides one N.O. and one N.C. trip contacts as standard for customer use.

ADFR2 (option L10) supplies one additional N.C. contact wired to user terminal block TB1.

The ATB relay (option R10) is an adjustable timing relay, factory set for 5 seconds. If the automatic transfer to bypass is enabled (using the selector switch mounted inside the enclosure), the relay provides a time delay before automatically transferring to bypass after a controller trip condition.
NOTE: You must confirm that application ductwork and piping can handle the pressure resulting from a rapid transfer to full speed operation.

The CMR is provided when control option F07 is supplied. The CMR provides contacts to control the RCR circuit. If the line contactor is used, contacts from the CMR keep power applied to the controller by keeping the line contactor closed when the motor is not running and removing control to LI1. CMR contacts are also used to remove the forced local from LI4. Forced local is a logic input assignment used to force start/stop and speed control command away from communication systems using local control operators such as Hand-Off-Auto.

The CVS relay is a timing relay providing indication of a properly sequenced check valve. If the check valve does not open within the specified time, the CVS relay times out and shuts down the controller. If the valve does not open after the controller starts, the CVS relay circuit illuminates a blue pilot light. Pressing the blue push-to-reset pilot light resets this circuit.

## Check Valve Sequence (CVS) Relay

Communication Mode Relay (CMR)

## Trip Reset

The M-Flex controllers have remote trip reset capability when H-O-A or H-O-A with Local/Remote control is used. In Auto mode, trips can be remotely reset by cycling the user's auto start contact. If automatic trip reset is not desired, the user's auto start contacts must remain in the closed state. To manually reset trip conditions, select the Off position of the H-O-A selector switch. To disable automatic trip reset, remove the wire connected between terminals TB2-C and ARCR-11.

When a trip reset occurs, the display trip is cleared and stored in the controller. The last eight trips are stored in the controller and can be viewed using the graphic display terminal.
When Start-Stop control option C07 or D07 is provided, a separate trip reset push button (option P10) must be used. When the trip reset push button is pressed the drive trip is reset.
When C-A-O-H control option F07 is provided, trip reset can be performed over the communication link or by cycling power using the disconnect handle at the controller.

To operate the controller, the circuit breaker disconnect located on the front of the controller must be in the closed position. There are several modes of operation depending upon the control method used.

- Two-wire control functionality: Hand-Off-Auto selector switch.
- In Hand mode, the controller automatically restarts when power is restored after a power loss or upon resetting a trip condition
- In Auto mode, restart depends on the auto-start contact position.
- Three-wire control functionality: Start/Stop push buttons. The controller will not restart when power is restored after a power loss or upon resetting an AFC trip. In Hand mode, the Start push button must be pressed to restart the controller. In Auto mode, restart is dependent on the auto start contact position.

The interlock terminals on terminal block TB1, noted below, are dedicated for accepting a user-supplied N.C. interlock. The power converter will stop operation if the connection between the two terminals is opened. Remove the factory jumper wire located on these terminals before installing the interlock.

- The fire/freezestat interlock connects to terminals TB1-1 to TB1-2.
- The external emergency stop interlock connects to terminals TB1-3 to TB1-4.
- Additional user interlocks connect at terminals TB1-3 to TB1-4 and TB1-5 to TB1-6.


## Power Circuit W (Drive Only)

This power circuit operates the motor from the power converter only (without bypass). It consists of:

- a fused control transformer
- circuit breaker disconnect with means for locking in the open position
- power converter
- optional equipment as specified

Operator Controls-General Arrangement and Operation (Drive Only)

The operator controls are located on the front door of the controller unless no control options are specified. The power converter is factory configured to operate in terminal mode.

Option D10 omits the graphic display terminal. If D10 is selected, to alter the programming of the power converter, you must order either a separate graphic display terminal or PowerSuite software.

This power circuit operates the motor either from the power converter or from full voltage line power (bypass mode). The motor can be run in the bypass mode in the unlikely event that the power converter becomes inoperative. The bypass package consists of:

- Isolation and bypass contactors with Class 20 overloads (Class 10 for 1 hp @ 460 V)
- Fused control transformer
- Circuit breaker disconnect with means for locking in the open position
- AFC-Off-Bypass switch
- Test-Normal switch
- Overload relay reset push button
- Power converter
- Optional equipment as specified

This power circuit operates the motor either from the power converter or from full voltage line power (bypass mode). This option consists of one floor mounted enclosure with two doors, two disconnects, and a barrier separating the power converter from the bypass circuit. Refer to Table 52. The bypass circuit consists of an across-the-line full-voltage starter, comprising a contactor (NEMA or IEC) and an overload relay. Each section is supplied by its own circuit breaker disconnect.

Table 52: Power Circuit Z: Enclosure Description

| Controller Rating | Power Converter Location | Enclosure Width |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1-25 hp, VT and 1-20 hp CT @ 460 V and $1-10 \mathrm{hp}$ VT, CT @ 208/230 V | Below the bypass circuit | $20 \mathrm{in} .(508 \mathrm{~mm})$ |
| 30-50 hp VT and 25-40 hp CT @ 460 V and 15-25 hp VT, 15-20 hp CT @ 208/230 V | Below the bypass circuit | $25 \mathrm{in} .(635 \mathrm{~mm})$ |
| 60-100 hp VT and 50-75 hp CT @ 460 V and $30-50 \mathrm{hp}$ VT, 25-40 hp CT @ 208/230 V | Below the bypass circuit | $30 \mathrm{in}$. ( 762 mm ) |
| 125-200 hp VT and 100-150 hp CT @ 460 V | To the left of the bypass circuit | Bypass section: <br> 25 in . 635 mm ) |

Barriered bypass provides two separate compartments, one for the controller and one for the bypass. This provides maximum maintenance flexibility if emergency full speed operation is required while servicing or replacing the controller. Each compartment is provided with its own circuit breaker disconnect with a door mounted operating handle to ensure the removal of power within the drive compartment when service is required. The circuit breaker disconnect for the bypass provides control power for the contactors and must remain on for drive operation. Line contactor option (B10) is not available as standard with a barriered bypass.

The bypass compartment door cannot be opened unless the power converter compartment door is open.

Operator Controls-General Arrangement and Operation (Bypass)

## Test-Normal Operation

## Bypass Operation

Operator controls are located on the front door of the controller unless no control options are specified. The controller is factory configured to operate in terminal command mode. Option D10 omits the graphic display terminal. If D10 is selected, to alter the programming of the power converter, you must order either a separate graphic display terminal or PowerSuite software.
The AFC-Off-Bypass switch allows selection of either adjustable speed operation of the motor through the power converter (AFC position) or line power operation of the motor (Bypass position). Both AFC and Bypass operation may be started in the Hand mode for immediate start or in the Auto mode for remote start with an external contact, when an HOA switch is used.

The test-normal switch can be used to test the power converter while operating the motor in bypass. To use this function and maintain motor operation, place the following switches in these positions:

- AFC-Off-Bypass: Set the switch to Bypass to run the motor at full speed across the line.
- Test-Normal: Set the switch to Test.
- Hand-Off-Auto: Set the switch to Hand. Use the manual speed potentiometer to change the speed reference and observe power converter operation. Refer to the Programming Manual on the CD supplied with the power converter, for trip definitions.

To control the operation of the motor with line power, the circuit breaker disconnect located on the front of the controller must be in the closed position and the AFC-Off-Bypass switch must be in the Bypass position. When the AFC-Off-Bypass selector switch is set to Bypass, motor operation is transferred to line power.

- In Hand mode the motor will immediately start.
- In Hand mode with a stop/start push button, the motor will start when the Start push button is pressed.
- In Auto mode, the motor will start when the user-supplied contact is closed.
- When the selector switch is moved to the Off position, the bypass contactor opens and the motor stops.


## Engineered Power Circuits

## Power Circuit R <br> (Isolation And Transfer-RVAT)

## Power Circuit S <br> (Barriered Bypass—SSRVS)

## Power Circuit T

(Isolation and Transfer)

## Modifications

## Control Function Descriptions (A07-F07)

Other engineered power-circuit modifications are available to provide backup and redundant control if the power converter becomes inoperable. Refer to the factory-supplied documentation for information on applying these configurations to address your specific requirements.

For units supplied with full-voltage starters, full-speed operation is provided at the end of the acceleration ramp.

This power circuit consists of isolation and transfer contactors integrated with a reduced-voltage autotransformer starter (RVAT) as the emergency bypass.

This power circuit consists of a barriered, compartmentalized enclosure design integrating a solid-state reduced-voltage starter (electronic soft start) as the emergency bypass.

This power circuit consists of isolation and transfer contactors to coordinate and connect an external electromechanical combination starter, reducedvoltage starter, or solid-state reduced-voltage starter as the emergency bypass.

Table 53 shows the door-mounted power converter control functions supplied with the available control options. Selector switches are provided for Hand-Off-Auto (H-O-A), Communication-Auto-Off-Hand (C-A-O-H), Forward/Reverse, and Local/Remote control. Push buttons are provided for Start and Stop functions and reset functions.

Table 53: Modification Control Circuits

| Control Option <br> (Modifications) | Hand | Off | Auto | Speed Potentiometer | Start/ <br> Stop | Forward/ <br> Reverse | Local/ <br> Remote | Communication |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| A07 | X | X | X | X |  |  |  |  |
| B07 | X | X | X | X | X |  |  |  |
| C07[1] |  |  |  | X | X |  |  |  |
| D07[1] |  |  |  | X | X | X |  |  |
| E07 | X | X | X | X |  |  |  |  |
| F07 | X | X | X | X |  | X |  |  |

1. This option is only available for power circuit W (drive only).

## Hand Mode <br> (2-Wire Control-Without Start/Stop)

## Hand Mode <br> (3-Wire Control-With Start/Stop)

## Off Mode

Hand mode is for local control. In Bypass operation, as soon as Hand mode is selected, a full-voltage across-the-line start occurs. In AFC operation, as soon as Hand mode is selected, the power converter starts the motor.

Hand mode is for local control. When used with start/stop buttons, the power converter does not start the motor until the Start button is pressed. In Bypass operation, a full-voltage across-the-line start occurs. In AFC operation, the power converter starts the motor.

Off mode commands the power converter to stop the motor by either following the programmed deceleration ramp (factory setting) or by a freewheel stop. Set the H-O-A switch to Off for trip reset.

## Auto Mode

## Start Push Button

## Stop Push Button

## Manual Speed Potentiometer

## Forward/Reverse

## Local/Remote

## Communication Mode

Auto mode is for remote control. In Bypass operation, a full-voltage or reduced-voltage start occurs when the user-supplied run contact is closed between controller terminals 8 and 9A on terminal block TB1. In Auto mode and AFC operation, the power converter starts the motor when the usersupplied run contact is closed between controller terminals 8 and 9A on terminal block TB1. Motor speed is varied by adjusting the user-supplied auto speed reference signal ( $4-20 \mathrm{~mA}$ ) supplied to terminals G1 (S2+) and J (S3) on terminal block TB2 in the controller. Refer to the Programming Manual on the CD supplied with the power converter, for scaling of this signal.
When using a communication card in Auto mode, forced local is inactive; therefore, the communications network can change the programming of the power converter.
When option J 10 is selected, the motor speed is varied by adjusting the user-supplied auto speed reference signal ( $0-10 \mathrm{Vdc}$ ) supplied to terminals G1 (S2+) and J (S3) on terminal block TB2.

The Start push button commands the controller to start the motor (in Hand mode) for local control.

## A WARNING

## INABILITY TO INITIATE A STOP

The Stop push button is only active in the Hand mode.

- To stop the controller, open the disconnect switch or set the Hand-Off-Auto switch to Off.
- Use appropriate guarding or interlocking.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death or serious injury.

The Stop push button commands the controller to stop the motor for local control by either following the programmed deceleration ramp (factory setting) or by freewheel stopping. If the Hand-Off-Auto switch is in the Auto mode, the switch must be set to Off to stop the power converter. The Stop push button is only active for local control (Hand), not for remote control (Auto).

The manual speed potentiometer is used to control the speed of the controller in Hand mode.

The Forward/Reverse switch selects the input to the power converter, which is programmed for $\mathrm{LI} 1=$ forward and $\mathrm{LI} 2=$ reverse.

The Local/Remote switch selects whether speed control is sent by signal into terminal Al1 (local) or AI2 (remote) on terminal block TB2, when the Hand-Off-Auto switch is in Auto mode.

Communication mode is for communication option card control of the controller. When Communication mode is selected the RCR is picked up, input to LI1 opens, and forced local releases. In Communication mode, the controller receives start, stop, and speed commands from a serial communication protocol.

## Pilot Light Option Clusters <br> (A08-F08)

The pilot light options listed in Table 54 provide visual indication of protective functions and circuit status. All pilot light bulbs are LEDs, which can be removed from the front with the enclosure door closed. All pilot lights are rated for 120 Vac.

Table 54: Pilot Light Cluster Identification

| Cluster/Option | Power On | AFC Run | Auto | Trip | Bypass | Forward | Reverse | Hand |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| A08, \#1 Cluster | X | X | X | X |  |  |  |  |
| B08, \#2 Cluster [1] | X | X |  | X | X |  |  |  |
| C08, \#3 Cluster [2] | X | X |  | X |  |  |  |  |
| D08, \#4 Cluster [2] | X |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| E08, \#5 Cluster | X | X | X | X |  |  |  |  |
| F08, \#6 Cluster | X | X |  | X |  | X | X |  |

1. This option is only available for power circuit $Y$ (integrated bypass) or power circuit $Z$ (barriered bypass).
2. This option is only available for power circuit W (drive only).

## Power On (red)

## AFC Run (green)

## Auto (yellow)

## Trip (yellow)

## Bypass (yellow)

## Forward (green)

## Reverse (green)

## Hand (blue)

## Comm (yellow)

This pilot light illuminates when mains power is applied to the controller.
This pilot light illuminates to annunciate an AFC run condition.
This pilot light illuminates to annunciate that speed control is via the remote contact closure and the $4-20 \mathrm{~mA}$ (or $0-10 \mathrm{Vdc}$ ) signal into AI2 with the Hand-Off-Auto switch set to Auto.

- For power circuit W (drive only): the pilot light illuminates to annunciate an AFC trip condition.
- For power circuit $Y$ (bypass) or power circuit $Z$ (barriered bypass): the pilot light illuminates to annunciate an AFC trip condition. When option B10 (line contactor) is selected, the light illuminates when the AFC-OffBypass selector switch is in the Off or Bypass position to indicate that the power converter is not running.

This pilot light illuminates when the motor is started across the line. The pilot light device is sequenced by initiation of the bypass contactor.

This pilot light illuminates to annunciate that the power converter is set to run in the forward direction with input to LII.

This pilot light illuminates to annunciate that the power converter is set to run in the reverse direction with input to LI2.

This pilot light illuminates to annunciate that speed control is by the speed potentiometer on Al1 and the Hand-Off-Auto switch is set to Hand.

This pilot light illuminates to annunciate that the Communication-Auto-OffHand switch is set to Comm and control is via a communication card with LI4 set to forced local.

## Communication Options

## A09: Modbus Plus

B09: Modbus/Uni-Telway
C09: Metasys N2

## D09: Ethernet

## E09: LONWORKS

F09: DeviceNet

## G09: Profibus

H09: I/O Extension Card

## J09: Apogee P1

K09: BACnet

## L09: Interbus

## M09: Fipio

## O09: Bluetooth USB

## P09: Bluetooth Modbus

## Q09: Bluetooth USB and Modbus

All communication cards are provided without factory programming. Refer to the communication card manual for a description of forced local operation.

This option card provides a factory-installed plug-in Modbus Plus card, VW3A3302. This interface device connects to a Modbus Plus tap.

This option card provides a factory-installed plug-in Modbus card, VW3A3303.

This option provides a factory-installed plug-in. Metasys N2 card, VW3A3318.

This option provides a factory-installed plug-in Ethernet card, VW3A3310D, with user termination to RJ45 plug-in interface connector.

This option provides a factory-installed LONWORKS card, VW3A3312.
This option provides a factory-installed plug-in DeviceNet card, VW3A3309, with user termination to a terminal block.

This option provides a factory-installed Profibus card, VW3A3307.
This option provides a $0-20 \mathrm{~mA}$ analog output for customer use. It includes a plug-in I/O extension card, VW3A3202. The output is factory-programmed for motor frequency. Refer to the Programming Manual on the CD supplied with the power converter, for other programming choices. Selectable $x-y$ range with graphic display terminal.

This option provides a factory-installed P1 card, VW3A3314.
This option provides a factory-installed BACnet card, VW3A3319.
This option provides a factory-installed Interbus card, VW3A3304.
This option provides a factory-installed Fipio card, VW3A3311.
This option provides a Bluetooth USB device, VW3A8115, pending availability.

This option provides a Bluetooth Modbus adapter, VW3A8114, pending availability.

This option provides both a Bluetooth USB device, VW3A8115, and a Bluetooth Modbus adapter, VW3A8114, pending availability.

## Miscellaneous Options

A10: 5\% Line Reactor

## B10: Line Contactor

C10: 3-15 psi Transducer with Digital Display (TB2-G1/S2+ to TB2-J/S3)

## D10: Omit Graphic Display Terminal

## E10: Smoke Purge Relay <br> (TB1-48 to TB1-49)

## F10: Additional Control Power VA (TB1-1 to TB1-50)

G10: cUL Listing

## H10: Seismic Qualified

## I10: Permanent Wire Marker Sleeves

## J10: 0-10 V Auto Speed Reference (TB2-G1/S2+ to J-S3)

This option includes an integrally mounted, 5\% AC line reactor factoryinstalled and wired between the circuit breaker disconnect means and the power converter (in place of the factory-installed 3\% AC line reactor) for harmonic mitigation.

This option is only available for power circuit Y (bypass). It provides a line contactor factory-wired between the circuit breaker disconnect (or line reactor or harmonic filter when provided) and the power converter.

NOTE: With line contactor option B10, the AFC Trip light illuminates when the AFC-Off-Bypass selector switch is in the Off or Bypass position to indicate that the power converter is not running.

When the line contactor is open, serial communication is disabled.
This option provides the controller with the capability to follow a 3-15 psi follower signal with digital display. The module is calibrated to operate as a 4-20 mA DC follower for the power converter. User connection to the module is made at terminals $\mathrm{G} 1(\mathrm{~S} 2+)$ and $\mathrm{J}(\mathrm{S} 3)$ on terminal block TB2. Not available with control options C07, start-stop, D07, forward-reverse, or if option $\mathrm{J} 10,0-10 \mathrm{~V}$ auto speed reference, is used.

This option omits the graphic display terminal. If option D10 is selected, to alter the programming of the power converter, you must order a separate graphic display terminal, PowerSuite software, or wireless bluetooth device.

This option provides a smoke purge operating mode controlled by a usersupplied 120 Vac signal applied between terminals 48 and 49 on terminal block TB1.

- For power circuit W (drive only): When 120 Vac power is supplied to 48 and 49, the controller runs the motor at 60 Hz .
- For power circuit $Y$ (integrated bypass) or power circuit $Z$ (barriered bypass): When 120 Vac power is supplied to 48 and 49, motor operation is transferred to bypass (if not operating in this mode already), and runs at full speed.

This option provides an additional 50 VA increase in the transformer at terminals 1 and 50 on terminal block TB1. It must be selected if options U10 and V10 are both selected.

This option provides Canadian cUL certification when required by local code requirements.

This option supplies a certification label and hardware qualified to seismic rating AC156 acceptance criteria test protocol with an importance factor of 1.5. Refer to "Seismic Qualification Mounting Criteria" on page 51.

This option provides permanent wire marking on the control wires with marker sleeves.

This option provides for a $0-10 \mathrm{~V}$ user-supplied auto speed reference signal into the AI2 input, terminals G1 (S2+) and J (S3) on terminal block TB2. The $0-10 \mathrm{~V}$ analog input is not optically isolated, but it does contain noise suppression circuitry and a programmable electronic filter. Not available with C07 or D07 controls, or with 3-15 psi transducer, C10.

K10: Additional N.O. Auxiliary Drive Run Contact (TB1-57 to TB1-58)

L10: Additional N.C. Auxiliary Drive Trip Contact (TB1-59 to TB1-60)

M10: N.O. Auxiliary Bypass Run Contact (TB1-61 to TB1-62)

010: N.O. Auxiliary Auto Mode Contact (TB1-63 to TB1-64)

## P10: AFC Trip Reset (TB2-A to TB2-C)

Q10: Push-to-Test Pilot Lights

R10: Auto Transfer to Bypass (TB1-23 to TB1-27 and TB1-22 to TB1-23)

## S10: Motor Elapsed Time Meter (TB1-44 to TB1-50)

T10: Emergency Stop (TB1-2 to TB1-3)

This option provides one N.O. drive run contact at terminals 57 and 58 on terminal block TB1 in addition to the Form C drive run contacts provided as standard. This contact indicates when the power converter is running.

This option supplies one N.C. drive trip contact at terminals 59 and 60 on terminal block TB1 in addition to the standard Form C drive trip contacts. This contact indicates a power converter trip.

This option is only available for power circuit $Y$ (bypass). It supplies one N.O. bypass run contact at terminals 61 and 62 on terminal block TB1 to indicate that the controller is running in bypass mode.

This option supplies one N.O. auto mode contact at terminals 63 and 64 on terminal block TB1 to indicate that the controller is set to run in Auto mode with a signal into Al2 and operation by remote operating contact. Not available with C07 or D07 controls.

This option is only available with control options C07 and D07 and for power circuit W (drive only). It provides trip reset to LI4 on the power converter at terminals A and C on terminal block TB2 when an H-O-A switch is not supplied.

This option provides a push-to-test feature on all pilot lights except Power On. Not available on a trip light unless P10 is selected.

This option is only available for power circuit $Y$ (integrated bypass) or power circuit $Z$ (barriered bypass). It is not available with control options B07, C07, or D07. This option provides an automatic transfer to bypass at terminals 23 to 27 and 22 to 23 on terminal block TB1. Whenever the power converter trips, this function transfers to bypass within 5 seconds of the trip. An enable/disable (off) switch is provided internally.

This option provides an elapsed time meter, connected at terminals 44 and 50 on terminal block TB1, which operates whenever the motor runs. The motor elapsed time meter is non-resettable

## A WARNING

## POWER IS MAINTAINED ON MOTOR AND CONTROLLER

- Emergency Stop, option T10, does not remove all power for the motor or the controller.
- Automatic restart may occur when the mushroom head operator is rotated to reclose the contact.
- Emergency Stop is a normal ramp-to-stop function using power from the controller, and it will force a controlled ramp-to-stop in all control modes, including Communication mode.
- Always open the controller disconnect or remove power to the controller after an emergency stop is initiated.


## Failure to follow these instructions can result in death or serious

 injury.This option provides an emergency stop mushroom-operator push button mounted on the enclosure door. The push button is maintained in the open position until the operator is rotated to reclose the contact. This option is not available with control options C07 or D07.

## U10: Motor Space Heater Sequencing (TB1-45 to TB1-50)

V10: Seal Water Solenoid (TB1-43 to TB150)

## W10: Check Valve Sequencing (TB1-46 to TB1-47)

## X10: I.D. Engraved Nameplates

Y10: Harmonic Filter Provisions

Z10: 24 Vdc Power Supply
[TB2-O (+) to TB2-N (COM)]

## 310: Order Engineered <br> (Internal Use Only)

410: RFI Suppressor

610: 100 kAIC

This option provides contact closure and terminals on terminal block TB1 with $120 \mathrm{~V} / 50 \mathrm{VA}$ available. This voltage will be available at terminals 45 and 50 whenever the motor is not running.

This option provides contact closure and terminals on terminal block TB1 with $120 \mathrm{~V} / 50 \mathrm{VA}$ available. This voltage will be available at terminals 43 and 50 whenever the motor is energized.

This option provides a timed safety contact at terminals 46 and 47 on terminal block TB1, available for an N.C. limit switch contact that shuts down the controller whenever the user-supplied limit switch contact does not open within a specified time. This option also supplies an illuminated blue reset push button on the enclosure door.

This option provides a lamacoid nameplate which is engraved per user request and attached to the front door of the enclosure.

This option provides fuses in a fuseblock for connection to an externally mounted harmonic filter input, and a distribution block for return wires from the harmonic filter to the controller. Not available for 1,2, or 3 hp controllers.

This option provides a $24 \mathrm{Vdc} / 300 \mathrm{~mA}$ power supply to terminals O (+) and N (COM) on terminal block TB2.

Order Engineered. For internal use only.

This option provides RFI suppression with ferrite cores which are factory attached on the power wires ahead of the power converter.

This option increases the short circuit current rating from 65 kA to 100 kA . It is available with controllers using the PowerPact P circuit breakers, 300 hp to 450 hp CT or 300 hp to 500 hp VT.

## Section 4-Maintenance and Support

## A DANGER

## HAZARD OF ELECTRIC SHOCK, EXPLOSION, OR ARC FLASH

- Apply appropriate personal protective equipment (PPE) and follow safe electrical work practices. See NFPA 70E.
- This equipment must only be installed and serviced by qualified electrical personnel.
- Turn off all power supplying this equipment before working on or inside equipment.
- Always use a properly rated voltage sensing device to confirm power is off.
- Replace all devices, doors, and covers before turning on power to this equipment.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

## ! DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRIC SHOCK, EXPLOSION, OR ARC FLASH

- Read and understand this bulletin in its entirety before installing or operating M-Flex controllers. Installation, adjustment, repair, and maintenance of the controllers must be performed by qualified personnel.
- User is responsible for conforming to all applicable code requirements with respect to grounding all equipment.
- Many parts in this controller, including printed wiring boards, operate at line voltage. DO NOT TOUCH. Use only electrically insulated tools.
- DO NOT short across DC bus capacitors or touch unshielded components or terminal strip screw connections with voltage present.
- Before servicing the controller:
- Disconnect all power including external control power that may be present before servicing the controller.
- Place a "DO NOT TURN ON" label on the controller disconnect.
- Lock the disconnect in open position.
- WAIT 15 MINUTES for the DC bus capacitors to discharge. Then follow the DC bus voltage measurement procedure on page 61 to verify that the DC voltage is less than 42 V . The controller LEDs are not accurate indicators of the absence of DC bus voltage.
- Install and close all covers before applying power or starting and stopping the controller.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

A number of diagnostic and status codes are included on the power converter. The graphic display terminal provides visual indication of controller operation and protective circuit functions and indicator lights to assist in maintenance and troubleshooting. If the controller trips while operating, the codes must be viewed before power is removed because removing power resets the trip code.
NOTE: For controllers equipped with optional line contactor (option B10) the power is removed via the line contactor in the event that the power converter trips.

## External Signs of Damage

## Preventive Maintenance

The following are examples of external signs of damage:

- Cracked, charred, or damaged covers or enclosure parts
- Damage to the graphic display terminal, such as scratches, punctures, burn marks, chemical burns, or moisture in the screen
- Oil or electrolyte on the bottom of the controller which might have leaked from the capacitors inside
- Excessive surface temperatures of enclosures and conduits
- Damage to power or control conductors
- Unusual noise or odors from any of the equipment
- Abnormal temperature, humidity, or vibration

If any of the above signs are found while the equipment is powered up, immediately inform operating personnel and assess the risk of leaving the drive system powered up. Before removing power from the equipment, always consult with the operating personnel responsible for the machinery and process.
If troubleshooting indicates that component replacement is necessary, refer to "Field Replacement of Power Converters" on page 105.

Type 1 controllers in the $1-7.5 \mathrm{hp}$ range at 460 V and $1-5 \mathrm{hp}$ range at 208/230 V use convection cooling. All converters use forced air cooling. Inspect the interior fans and exterior fans of the controller for blockage and impeded rotation. To prevent overheating and to allow proper air flow, maintain the clearances shown on the enclosure outline drawings on pages 32-46.
To maintain the environmental rating of Type $12 / 12 \mathrm{~K}$ enclosures, periodically inspect the enclosure gaskets for damage.
The graphic display terminal is an integral part of the enclosure and must be installed on the door to maintain the environmental integrity of a Type $12 / 12 \mathrm{~K}$ enclosure. It can be omitted when option D10 is selected and in that case a closing plate must be installed to maintain the Type 12/12K environmental rating.
On 100-450 hp CT and 125-500 hp VT, 460 V controller with 1G enclosures, clean the filters at least once every 6 months. See Appendix B on page 115.

## Field Replacement of Power Converters

## 1-75 hp CT and 1-100 hp VT

Power converters cannot be replaced in the field on 100-450 hp CT or 125-500 hp VT 460 V controllers. For replacement of power converters on drives in the range, contact:

Schneider Electric
Drives Product Support Group
Toll free: 1-888-778-2733
Fax: 919-217-6508
E-mail: drive.products.support@ schneider-electric.com

If the power converter becomes inoperable in the M-Flex controllers, it must be replaced. Refer to Table 55 for power converter weight before handling this component.

Table 55: Power Converter Weights

| Horsepower |  |  |  | Weight |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Variable | rque (VT) | Constan | t Torque T) |  | um, rter | Max., with | verter ange |
| 460 V | 208/230 V | 460 V | 208/230 V | lb | kg | lb | kg |
| 1-25 | 1-5 | 1-20 | 1-5 | 19.8 | 9.0 | 30.6 | 13.9 |
| - | 7.5-10 | - | 7.5-10 | 19.8 | 9.0 | 30.6 | 13.9 |
| 30-50 | 15-25 | 25-40 | 15-20 | 57.2 | 26.0 | 66.4 | 30.2 |
| 60-100 | 30-50 | 50-75 | 25-40 | 96.8 | 44.0 | 108.2 | 49.2 |
| $125{ }^{[1]}$ | - | 100 [1] | - | 96.8 | 44.0 | - | - |
| 150-250 [1] | - | 125-200 [1] | - | 176.0 | 80.0 | - | - |
| 300-500 [1] | - | 250-450 [1] | - | 308.0 | 140.0 | - | - |
| 1. For replacement of any $100-450 \mathrm{hp}$ CT or $125-500 \mathrm{hp}$ VT power converters, contact Schneider Electric AC Drives Technical Support. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

Observe the lockout/tagout procedures as identified in OSHA Standard 29 CFR, Subpart J covering:

- 1910.147: The control of hazardous energy (lockout/tagout).
- 1910.147: App A, Typical minimal lockout procedures.


## A DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRIC SHOCK, EXPLOSION, OR ARC FLASH

- Disconnect all power.
- Place a "Do Not Turn On" label on the controller disconnect.
- Lock the disconnect in the open position.
- Read and understand the bus voltage measurement procedure on page 61 before performing the procedure. Measurement of bus capacitor voltage must be performed by qualified personnel.
- Many parts in the controller, including printed wiring boards, operate at line voltage. DO NOT TOUCH. Use only electrically insulated tools.
- DO NOT short across DC bus capacitors or touch unshielded components or terminal strip screw connectors with voltage present.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

Figure 31: Circuit Breaker Handle Assembly

208/230 V; and 1-75 hp CT / 1-100 hp VT @ 460 V


100-450 hp CT / 125-500 hp VT @ 460 V


Installing the Power Converter
Assembly

## ACAUTION

## ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE

Do not subject this device to electrostatic discharge. This controller contains electronic components that are very susceptible to damage from electrostatic discharge.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in injury or equipment damage.

To replace the power converter:

1. Open the controller door by moving the circuit breaker handle assembly to the Off position. Refer to Figure 31.
2. Measure the DC bus voltage as described on page 61 of this instruction bulletin.
3. Disconnect all power and control wiring from the power converter assembly. Identify each wire for ease of re-assembling the new power converter.
4. For the $60-100 \mathrm{hp} \mathrm{VT}, 50-75 \mathrm{hp}$ CT 460 V and $30-50 \mathrm{hp} \mathrm{VT}, 25-40 \mathrm{hp}$ CT 208/230 V, it is necessary to remove the heatsink fan assembly before removing the power converter. Refer to the "Field Replacement of the Heatsink Fan Assembly" on page 108 for directions.
5. Remove the outside hex-slot flange screws that secure the power converter to the enclosure back pan. Refer to Figures 26-29 starting on page 64 for screw locations. Refer to Table 56 for the number of screws on your controller. Keep the screws for the new power converter.
6. Remove the power converter assembly from the enclosure.

Table 56: Number of Flange Screws

| Constant Torque (CT) <br> hp <br> $\mathbf{4 6 0} \mathbf{~ V ~}$ |  | Variable Torque (VT) <br> hp |  | No. of Screws |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $1-5$ | $\mathbf{2 0 8} 2 \mathbf{2 3 0} \mathbf{~ V}$ | $\mathbf{4 6 0} \mathbf{~ V}$ | $\mathbf{2 0 8} / \mathbf{2 3 0} \mathbf{~ V}$ |  |
| $7.5-20$ | $1-5$ | $1-7.5$ | $1-5$ | 10 |
| 25 | $7.5-10$ | $10-25$ | $7.5-10$ | 10 |
| 30 | $10-20$ | 30 | $15-25$ | 10 |
| 40 | - | 40 | - | 12 |
| - | - | 50 | - | 14 |
| 50 | 40 | - | $30-40$ | 12 |
| $60-75$ | - | $75-100$ | - | 14 |

To install the new power converter:

1. Install the new power converter assembly in the enclosure.
2. Secure the power converter frame to the enclosure back pan with the flange screws from the removed power converter. Torque the screws to $15 \pm 2 \mathrm{lb}$-in ( $1.7 \pm 0.2 \mathrm{~N} \cdot \mathrm{~m}$ ).
3. Install all power and control wiring to the power converter assembly terminal blocks. Install all other removed equipment. Tighten the hardware to the torque values given in Tables 57-59 on page 107. Check all wiring connections for correct terminations and check the power wiring for grounds with an ohmmeter.
4. Shut the enclosure door, secure the door with door fasteners, and close the circuit breaker disconnect.

## A DANGER

UNQUALIFIED PERSONNEL

- This equipment must be installed and serviced only by qualified personnel.
- Qualified personnel performing diagnostics or troubleshooting requiring electrical conductors to be energized, must comply with NFPA 70 E Standard for Electrical Safety Requirements for Employee Workplaces and OSHA Standards - 29 CFR Part 1910 Subpart S Electrical.


## Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious

 injury.5. Program the controller according to the control circuit elementary diagrams provided with each controller. Follow the initial start-up procedure on page 77.
The controller is now ready to operate.
Table 57: Converter Power Terminal Torque-460 V

| VT |  | CT |  | Torque |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Catalog Number | hp | Catalog Number | hp | lb-in | $\mathrm{N} \cdot \mathrm{m}$ |
| MFDC•4V_ to MFDG•4V_ | 1-7.5 | MFDC•4C_ to MFDF•4C_ | 1-5 | 12.3 | 1.4 |
| MFDH•4V_ to MFDJ•4V_ | 10-15 | MFDG•4C_ to MFDH•4C_ | 7.5-10 | 26.5 | 3 |
| MFDK•4V_ | 20 | MFDJ•4C_ | 15 | 26.5 | 3 |
| MFDL•4V_ to MFDM•4V_ | 25-30 | MFDK•4C_ to MFDL•4C_ | 20-25 | 47.7 | 5.4 |
| MFDN•4V_ to MFDQ•4V_ | 40-60 | MFDM•4C_ to MFDP•4C_ | 30-50 | 106.2 | 12 |
| MFDR•4V_ to MFDT•4V_ | 75-125 | MFDQ 4 C _ to MFDS•4C_ | 60-100 | 360 | 41 |
| MFDU•4V_ | 150 | MFDT•4C | 125 | 212 | 24 |
| MFDW•4V_ | 200 | MFDU•4C | 150 | 212 | 24 |
| MFDX•4V_ | 250 | MFDW•4C | 200 | 212 | 24 |
| MFDY•4V_ | 300 | MFDX•4C | 250 | 360 | 41 |
| MFDZ•4V_ | 350 | MFDY•4C | 300 | 360 | 41 |
| MFD4•4V_ | 400 | MFDZ•4C | 350 | 360 | 41 |
| MFD5.4V_ | 450 | MFD4•4C | 400 | 360 | 41 |
| MFD6.4V_ | 500 | MFD5•4C | 450 | 360 | 41 |

Table 58: Converter Power Terminal Torque-230 V

| VT |  | CT |  | Torque |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Catalog Number | hp | Catalog Number | hp | lb-in | N•m |
| MFDC•3V_ to MFDG•3V_- | $1-7.5$ | MFDC•3C_to MFDF•3C_ | $1-5$ | 12.3 | 1.4 |
| MFDH•3V_ to MFDJ•3V_ | $10-15$ | MFDG•3C_to MFDH•3C_ | $7.5-10$ | 26.5 | 3 |
| MFDK•3V_ to MFDL•3V_ | $20-25$ | MFDJ•3C_ to MFDK•3C_ | $15-20$ | 47.7 | 5.4 |
| MFDM•3V_ to MFDN•3V_- | $30-40$ | MFDL•3C_ to MFDM $\cdot 3 C_{-}$ | $25-30$ | 106.2 | 12 |
| MFDP•3V_ | 50 | MFDN•3C_ | 40 | 360 | 41 |

Table 59: Converter Power Terminal Torque-208 V

| VT |  | CT |  | Torque |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Catalog Number | hp | Catalog Number | hp | lb-in | $\mathrm{N} \cdot \mathrm{m}$ |
| MFDC•2V_ to MFDG•2V_ | 1-7.5 | MFDC•2C_ to MFDF•2C_ | 1-5 | 12.3 | 1.4 |
| MFDH•2V_ to MFDJ•2V_ | 10-15 | MFDG•2C_ to MFDH•2C_ | 7.5-10 | 26.5 | 3 |
| MFDK.2V_to MFDL $2 \mathrm{~V}_{-}$ | 20-25 | MFDJ•2C_ to MFDK•2C_ | 15-20 | 47.7 | 5.4 |
| MFDM•2V_ to MFDN•2V_ | 30-40 | MFDL•2C_to MFDM•2C_ | 25-30 | 106.2 | 12 |
| MFDP•2V_ | 50 | MFDN•2C_ | 40 | 360 | 41 |

## Field Replacement of the Heatsink Fan Assembly

## Removing the Heatsink Fan Assembly

All converters use forced air cooling. If a heatsink fan becomes inoperable in the $10-100 \mathrm{hp} 460 \mathrm{~V}$ or $7.5-50 \mathrm{hp} \mathrm{208/230} \mathrm{~V}$ controllers, the fan assembly must be replaced. Observe the lockout/tagout procedures as identified in OSHA Standard 29 CFR, Subpart J covering:

- 1910.147: The control of hazardous energy (lockout/tagout).
- 1910.147: App A, Typical minimal lockout procedures.

NOTE: A heatsink fan assembly is required for this procedure. Refer to the Renewable Parts tables in Appendix A for the catalog number.

## A DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRIC SHOCK, EXPLOSION, OR ARC FLASH

- Disconnect all power.
- Place a "Do Not Turn On" label on the controller disconnect.
- Lock the disconnect in open position.
- Read and understand the bus voltage measurement procedure on page 61 before performing the procedure. Measurement of bus capacitor voltage must be performed by qualified personnel.
- Many parts in the controller, including printed wiring boards, operate at line voltage. DO NOT TOUCH. Use only electrically insulated tools.
- DO NOT short across DC bus capacitors or touch unshielded components or terminal strip screw connectors with voltage present.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

## ACAUTION

## ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE

Do not subject this device to electrostatic discharge. This controller contains electronic components that are very susceptible to damage from electrostatic discharge.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in injury or equipment damage.

To replace the heatsink fan assembly, follow these steps:

1. Open the controller door by moving the circuit breaker handle assembly to the Off position. Refer to Figure 31 on page 106.
2. Measure the DC bus voltage as described on page 61.

## Installing the Heatsink Fan Assembly

3. Locate the heatsink fan assembly.
4. Remove the four screws securing the heatsink fan assembly. Keep the four screws.
5. Lift the heatsink fan assembly above the flange opening.
6. Disconnect the heatsink fan cable from the converter.
7. Remove the heatsink fan assembly from the enclosure.

To install the new heatsink fan assembly, follow these steps:

1. Place the heatsink fan assembly near the flange opening.
2. Connect the heatsink fan assembly wiring plug to the converter cable, below the flange.
3. Install the heatsink fan assembly. Secure the assembly with the four screws saved from Step 4 above. Torque the screws to 15 lb -in ( $1.7 \mathrm{~N} \cdot \mathrm{~m}$ ).
4. Shut the enclosure door and secure it with door fasteners. Then close the circuit breaker disconnect.
5. The controller is now ready to operate.

If a stirring fan inside the enclosure becomes inoperable in the M-Flex controllers, the fan must be replaced.

Before removing the inoperable stirring fan, mark and note the airflow direction to help ensure proper installation of the replacement fan.

Floor mount units (460 V, 30-100 hp VT / 25-75 hp CT and 208/230 V $15-50 \mathrm{hp}$ VT / 15-40 hp CT) use a plenum fan to assist in air movement over the controller heatsink. If the plenum fan becomes inoperable in the MFlex controller, the fan must be replaced.

Before removing the inoperable plenum fan, mark the airflow direction on the plenum fan mounting bracket to ensure proper installation of the replacement fan.

## Technical Support

## Schneider Electric Services (On-Site)

Schneider Electric Customer Training

When troubleshooting the M-Flex controller, discuss with operating personnel the symptoms of the reported problems. Ask them to describe the problem, when they first observed the problem, and where the problem was seen. Observe directly the drive system and process.

For more information, call, fax, or e-mail:
Schneider Electric
Drives Product Support Group
Toll free: 1-888-778-2733
E-mail: drive.products.support@schneider-electric.com
Fax: 919-217-6508
The Drive Products Support Group is staffed from 8 am to 8 pm Eastern time for diagnosis of product problems and advice for the correct course of action. Emergency startup or breakdown phone support is available seven days a week, 24 hours a day, 365 days a year.

The Schneider Electric Services division is committed to providing quality, on-site service that consistently meets customer expectations. Services responds to your requests, seven days a week, 24 hours a day.
Toll free: 1-888-778-2733
Schneider Electric offers a variety of instructor-led, skill enhancing and technical product training programs for customers. For a complete list of drives/soft start training with dates, locations, and pricing, please call:

Phone: 866-507-0894
Fax: 859-372-1565

## Appendix A—Renewable Parts

Table 60: 460 V Renewable Parts, $1-100 \mathrm{hp}$ VT / 1-75 hp CT

| Description | Qty | 1-7.5 hp | Qty | 10-25 hp | Qty | 30-50 hp | Qty | 60--100 hp |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Power Converter: Variable Torque (VT) ${ }^{[3]}$ | 1 | ATV61H075N4 (1 hp) ATV61HU15N4 (2 hp) ATV61HU15N4 (3 hp) ATV61HU30N4 (5 hp) ATV61HU40N4 (7.5 hp) | 1 | ATV61HU55N4 (10 hp) ATV61HU75N4 (15 hp) ATV61HD11N4 (20 hp) ATV61HD15N4 (25 hp) | 1 | ATV61HD18N4 (30 hp) ATV61HD22N4 (40 hp) ATV61HD30N4 (50 hp) | 1 | ATV61HD37N4 ( 60 hp ) ATV61HD45N4 (75 hp) ATV61HD55N4 (100 hp) |
| Power Converter: Constant Torque (CT) ${ }^{[3]}$ | 1 | ATV71H075N4 (1 hp) ATV71HU15N4 (2 hp) ATV71HU22N4 (3 hp) ATV71HU40N4 (5 hp) ATV71HU55N4 (7.5 hp) | 1 | ATV71HU75N4 (10 hp) ATV71HD11N4 (15 hp) ATV71HD15N4 (20 hp) ATV71HD18N4 (25 hp) | 1 | ATV71HD22N4 (30 hp) ATV71HD30N4 (40 hp) ATV71HD37N4 (50 hp) | 1 | ATV71HD45N4 (60 hp) ATV71HD55N4 (75 hp) |
| Graphic Display Terminal | 1 | VW3A1101 | 1 | VW3A1101 | 1 | VW3A1101 | 1 | VW3A1101 |
| Primary Control Fuses |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Standard 300 VA | 2 | 25430-20320 | 2 | 25430-20320 | 2 | 25430-20320 | 2 | 25430-20320 |
| Barriered bypass additional 150 VA | 2 | 25430-20150 | 2 | 25430-20150 | 2 | 25430-20150 | $2$ | 25430-20150 |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { Option F10 } \\ & 350 \text { VA } \end{aligned}$ | 2 | 25430-20351 | 2 | 25430-20351 | 2 | 25430-20351 | 2 | 25430-20351 |
| Secondary Control Fuses |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Standard | 1 | 25430-20400 | 1 | 25430-20400 | 1 | 25430-20400 | 1 | 25430-20400 |
| Barriered bypass | 1 | 25430-20200 | 1 | 25430-20200 | 1 | 25430-20200 | 1 | 25430-20200 |
| Option F10 | 1 | 25430-20500 | 1 | 25430-20500 | 1 | 25430-20500 | 1 | 25430-20500 |
| Pilot Light, Red | 1 | LED 25501-00003 Head ZB5AV04 | 1 | LED 25501-00003 Head ZB5AV04 | 1 | LED 25501-00003 Head ZB5AV04 | 1 | LED 25501-00003 Head ZB5AV04 |
| Pilot Light, Yellow | 2 | LED 25501-00004 Head ZB5AV05 w/o p-t-t [1] Head ZB5AW35 w/ p-t-t [1] | 2 | LED 25501-00004 Head ZB5AV05 w/o p-t-t [1] Head ZB5AW35 w/ p-t-t [1] | 2 | LED 25501-00004 Head ZB5AV05 w/o p-t-t [1] Head ZB5AW35 w/ p-t-t [1] | 2 | LED 25501-00004 Head ZB5AV05 w/o p-t-t [1] Head ZB5AW35 w/ p-t-t [1] |
| Pilot Light, Green | 1 | LED 25501-00005 Head ZB5AV03 w/o p-t-t [1] Head ZB5AW33 w/ p-t-t [1] | 1 | LED 25501-00005 Head ZB5AV03 w/o p-t-t [1] Head ZB5AW33 w/ p-t-t [1] | 1 | LED 25501-00005 Head ZB5AV03 w/o p-t-t [1] Head ZB5AW33 w/ p-t-t [1] | 1 | LED 25501-00005 Head ZB5AV03 w/o p-t-t [1] Head ZB5AW33 w/ p-t-t [1] |
| Pilot Light, Blue | 1 | LED 25501-00006 Head ZB5AV06 w/o p-t-t [1] Head ZB5AW36 w/ p-t-t [1] | 1 | LED 25501-00006 Head ZB5AV06 w/o p-t-t [1] Head ZB5AW36 w/ p-t-t [1] | 1 | LED 25501-00006 Head ZB5AV06 w/o p-t-t [1] Head ZB5AW36 w/ p-t-t [1] | 1 | LED 25501-00006 Head ZB5AV06 w/o p-t-t [1] Head ZB5AW36 w/ p-t-t [1] |
| Pilot Light Mounting Collar w/ Light Module | 1 | ZB5AV6 | 1 | ZB5AV6 | 1 | ZB5AV6 | 1 | ZB5AV6 |
| Pilot Light Mounting Collar w/ Light Module, and 1 N.O. and 1 N.C. Contact for $p-t-t{ }^{[1]}$ | 1 | ZB5AW065 | 1 | ZB5AW065 | 1 | ZB5AW065 | 1 | ZB5AW065 |
| 1/O Extension [2] | 1 | VW3A3202 | 1 | VW3A3202 | 1 | VW3A3202 | 1 | VW3A3202 |
| LONWORKS [2] | 1 | VW3A3312 | 1 | VW3A3312 | 1 | VW3A3312 | 1 | VW3A3312 |
| Modbus [2] | 1 | VW3A3303 | 1 | VW3A3303 | 1 | VW3A3303 | 1 | VW3A3303 |
| Metasys N2 [2] | 1 | VW3A3318 | 1 | VW3A3318 | 1 | VW3A3318 | 1 | VW3A3318 |
| 24 Vdc Supply | 1 | ABL7CEM24003 | 1 | ABL7CEM24003 | 1 | ABL7CEM24003 | 1 | ABL7CEM24003 |
| Stirring Fan Assembly | 1 | N/A | 1 | 31158-065-50 | 2 | 31158-065-50 | 2 | 31158-065-50 |

1. p-t-t: Push-to-test operator.
2. Field replacement of the option board resets the power converter to the factory defaults. The user must configure the controller per the elementary diagram provided.
3. The first three characters of the power converter catalog number may be ATV, signifying an IP20 rating, or HTV, signifying an IP00 rating.

Table 60: 460 V Renewable Parts, 1-100 hp VT / 1-75 hp CT (continued)

| Description | Qty | 1-7.5 hp | Qty | 10-25 hp | Qty | 30-50 hp | Qty | 60--100 hp |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Heatsink Fans | 1 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { VZ3V1203 (1-3 hp) } \\ & \text { VZ3V1209 (5-7.5 hp) } \end{aligned}$ | 1 | $\begin{array}{\|l} \text { VZ3V1204 } \\ \text { (10-15 hp VT, } 10 \mathrm{hp} \mathrm{CT}) \\ \text { VZ3V1210 } \\ \text { (20 hp VT, } 15 \mathrm{hp} \text { CT) } \\ \text { VZ3V1205 } \\ \text { (25 hp VT, } 20 \mathrm{hp} \mathrm{CT}) \end{array}$ | 1 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { VZ3V1205 } \\ & \text { (30 hp VT, } 25 \mathrm{hp} \text { CT }) \\ & \text { VZ3V1211 } \\ & \text { (40 hp VT, } 30 \mathrm{hp} \text { CT) } \\ & \text { VZ3V1206 } \\ & \text { (50 hp VT, } 40 \mathrm{hp} \mathrm{CT}) \end{aligned}$ | 1 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { VZ3V1206 } \\ & \text { (60 hp VT, } 50 \mathrm{hp} \mathrm{CT} \text { ) } \\ & \text { VZ3V1208 } \\ & \text { (75-100 hp VT, 60-75 hp CT) } \end{aligned}$ |
| Plenum Fan Assembly | - | N/A | - | N/A | 1 | 31164-215-50 | 1 | 31164-215-50 |
| Filter for Input Plenum | - |  | - |  | 1 | 31164-152-01 | 1 | 31164-153-01 |
| Barriered Enclosure | 1 | 31164-152-01 | 1 | 31164-152-01 | 1 | 31164-153-01 | 1 | 31164-174-01 |
| Circuit Breaker Handle | 1 | 3 in. handle for wall mount and barriered floor mount enclosure: 9421LH3 | 1 | 3 in. handle for wall mount and barriered floor mount enclosure: 9421LH3 | 1 | 6 in. handle for floor mount enclosure: 9421LH6 | 1 | 6 in. handle for floor mount enclosure: 9421LH6 |
| 1. p-t-t: Push-to-test operator. <br> 2. Field replacement of the option board resets the power converter to the factory defaults. The user must configure the controller per the elementary diagram provided. <br> 3. The first three characters of the power converter catalog number may be ATV, signifying an IP20 rating, or HTV, signifying an IP00 rating. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

Table 61: 460 V, Renewable Parts 125-500 hp VT / 100-450 hp CT

| Description | Qty | 125-200 hp | Qty | 250 hp | Qty | 300-500 hp |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Power Converter: Variable Torque (VT) ${ }^{[4]}$ | 1 | ATV61HD75N4 (125 hp) ATV61HC11N4 (150 hp) ATV61HC13N4 (200 hp) | 1 | ATV61HC16N4 (250 hp) | 1 | ATV61HC22N4 (300 hp) ATV61HC22N4 (350 hp) ATV61HC25N4 (400 hp) ATV61HC31N4 (450 hp) ATV61HC31N4 (500 hp) |
| Power Converter: Constant Torque (CT) ${ }^{[4]}$ | 1 | ATV71HD75N4 (100 hp) ATV71HD90N4 (125 hp) ATV71HC11N4 (150 hp) ATV71HC13N4 (200 hp) | 1 | - | - | ATV71HC16N4 (250 hp) ATV71HC20N4 (300 hp) ATV71HC25N4 (350 hp) ATV71HC25N4 (400 hp) ATV71HC28N4 (450 hp) |
| Graphic Display Terminal | 1 | VW3A1101 | 1 | VW3A1101 | 1 | VW3A1101 |
| Power Fuses | - | - | 3 | Bussmann LPJ400SP (CT) | 3 | Bussmann LPJ500SP (300 hp CT) <br> Bussmann LPJ600SP (350-400 hp CT) <br> Bussmann LPJ600SP (300-500 hp VT) |
| Primary Control Fuses Standard | 2 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 25430-20161 (no bypass) } \\ & \text { 25430-20281 (w/ bypass) } \end{aligned}$ | 2 | 25430-20161 (no bypass) | 2 | 25430-20281 (no bypass) |
| Secondary Control Fuses Standard | 1 | 25430-20250 (no bypass) <br> 25430-20400 (w/ bypass) | 1 | 25430-20250 (no bypass) | 1 | 25430-20400 (no bypass) |
| Pilot Light Red | 1 | LED 25501-00003 Head ZB5AV04 | 1 | LED 25501-00003 Head ZB5AV04 | 1 | LED 25501-00003 Head ZB5AV04 |
| Pilot Light Yellow | 2 | LED 25501-00004 Head ZB5AV05 w/o p-t-t [1] Head ZB5AW35 w/ p-t-t [1] | 2 | LED 25501-00004 Head ZB5AV05 w/o p-t-t [1] Head ZB5AW35 w/ p-t-t [1] | 2 | LED 25501-00004 Head ZB5AV05 w/o p-t-t [1] Head ZB5AW35 w/ p-t-t [1] |
| Pilot Light Green | 1 | LED 25501-00005 Head ZB5AV03 w/o p-t-t [1] Head ZB5AW33 w/ p-t-t [1] | 1 | LED 25501-00005 Head ZB5AV03 w/o p-t-t [1] Head ZB5AW33 w/ p-t-t [1] | 1 | LED 25501-00005 Head ZB5AV03 w/o p-t-t [1] Head ZB5AW33 w/ p-t-t [1] |
| Pilot Light Blue | 1 | LED 25501-00006 Head ZB5AV06 w/o p-t-t [1] Head ZB5AW36 w/ p-t-t [1] | 1 | LED 25501-00006 Head ZB5AV06 w/o p-t-t [1] Head ZB5AW36 w/ p-t-t [1] | 1 | LED 25501-00006 Head ZB5AV06 w/o p-t-t [1] Head ZB5AW36 w/ p-t-t [1] |
| Pilot Light Mounting Collar w/ Light Module | 1 | ZB5AV6 | 1 | ZB5AV6 | 1 | ZB5AV6 |
| Pilot Light Mounting Collar w/ Light Module and 1 N.O. and 1 N.C. Contact for p-t-t [1] | 1 | ZB5AW065 | 1 | ZB5AW065 | 1 | ZB5AW065 |

1. p-t-t: Push-to-test operator.
2. Field replacement of the option board resets the power converter to the factory defaults. The user must configure the controller per the elementary diagram provided.
3. See Appendix B on page 115 for maintenance instructions.
4. The first three characters of the power converter catalog number may be ATV, signifying an IP20 rating, or HTV, signifying an IP00 rating.

Table 61: 460 V, Renewable Parts $125-500 \mathrm{hp}$ VT / 100-450 hp CT (continued)

| Description | Qty | 125-200 hp | Qty | 250 hp | Qty | 300-500 hp |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1/O Extension [2] | 1 | VW3A3202 | 1 | VW3A3202 | 1 | VW3A3202 |
| LONWORKS ${ }^{[2]}$ | 1 | VW3A3312 | 1 | VW3A3312 | 1 | VW3A3312 |
| Modbus [2] | 1 | VW3A3303 | 1 | VW3A3303 | 1 | VW3A3303 |
| Metasys N2 [2] | 1 | VW3A3318 | 1 | VW3A3318 | 1 | VW3A3318 |
| 24 Vdc Supply | 1 | ABL7CEM24003 | 1 | ABL7CEM24003 | 1 | ABL7CEM24003 |
| Stirring Fan Kit | 1 | 26016-31100 | 1 | 26016-31100 | 2 | 26016-31100 |
| Heatsink Fan Assembly | 1 | VZ3V1208 (125 hp VT, 100 hp CT) <br> VZ3V1215 (150 hp VT, 125 hp CT) <br> VZ3V1212 (200 hp VT, 150-200 hp CT) | 1 | VZ3V1212 (250 hp VT, CT) | 1 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { VZ3V1212 } \\ & \text { (300-500 hp VT, 300-450 hp CT) } \end{aligned}$ |
| Internal Fan Kit | 1 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { VZ3V1214 } \\ & \text { (150-200 hp VT, 125-150 hp CT) } \\ & \text { VZ3V1213 (200 hp CT) } \end{aligned}$ <br> Note: 125 hp VT, 100 hp CT internal fan not required) | 1 | VZ3V1213 (250 hp VT, CT) | 1 | VZ3V1213 <br> (300-500 hp VT, 300-450 hp CT) |
| Foam Filter Element for 1G Enclosures [3] | 1 | 80444-134-01 | 1 | 80444-134-01 | 1 | 80444-134-02 |
| Circuit Breaker Operating Mechanism | 1 | 80418-841-50 (125 hp, no bypass) <br> 80439-801-51 (150-200 hp, no bypass) <br> 80444-669-50 (w/ bypass) | 1 | 80439-801-51 (no bypass) | 1 | 80439-805-51 (no bypass) |

1. p-t-t: Push-to-test operator.
2. Field replacement of the option board resets the power converter to the factory defaults. The user must configure the controller per the elementary diagram provided.
3. See Appendix $B$ on page 115 for maintenance instructions.
4. The first three characters of the power converter catalog number may be ATV, signifying an IP20 rating, or HTV, signifying an IP00 rating.

Table 62: 208/230 V Renewable Parts, 1-50 hp VT / 1-40 hp CT

| Description | Qty | 1-5 hp | Qty | 7.5-10 hp | Qty | 15-25 hp | Qty | 30-50 hp |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Power Converter: <br> Variable Torque (VT) ${ }^{[3]}$ | 1 | ATV61H075M3 (1 hp) ATV61HU15M3 (2 hp) ATV61HU15M3 (3 hp) ATV61HU30M3 (5 hp) | 1 | ATV61HU40M3 (7.5 hp) ATV61HU55M3 (10 hp) | 1 | ATV61HU75M3 (15 hp) ATV61HD11M3X (20 hp) ATV61HD15M3X (25 hp) | 1 | ATV61HD18M3X (30 hp) ATV61HD22M3X ( 40 hp ) ATV61HD30M3X ( 50 hp ) |
| Power Converter: Constant Torque (CT) ${ }^{[3]}$ | 1 | ATV71H075M3 (1 hp) ATV71HU15M3 (2 hp) ATV71HU22M3 (3 hp) ATV71HU40M3 (5 hp) | 1 | ATV71HU55M3 (7.5 hp) ATV71HU75M3 (10 hp) | 1 | ATV71HD11M3X (15 hp) ATV71HD15M3X (20 hp) ATV71HD18M3X (25 hp) | 1 | ATV71HD22M3X (30 hp) ATV71HD30M3X (40 hp) |
| Graphic Display Terminal | 1 | VW3A1101 | 1 | VW3A1101 | 1 | VW3A1101 | 1 | VW3A1101 |
| Control Fuses Primary <br> Standard <br> Barriered bypass additional 150 VA <br> Option F10 | 2 | $\begin{aligned} & 25430-20625 \\ & 25430-20350(208 \mathrm{~V}) \\ & 25430-20300(230 \mathrm{~V}) \\ & 25430-20800(208 \mathrm{~V}) \\ & 25430-20750(230 \mathrm{~V}) \end{aligned}$ | 2 | $\begin{array}{\|l} 25430-20625 \\ 25430-20350(208 \mathrm{~V}) \\ 25430-20300(230 \mathrm{~V}) \\ 25430-20800(208 \mathrm{~V}) \\ 25430-20750(230 \mathrm{~V}) \end{array}$ | 2 | $\begin{array}{\|l} 25430-20625 \\ 25430-20350(208 \mathrm{~V}) \\ 25430-20300(230 \mathrm{~V}) \\ 25430-20800(208 \mathrm{~V}) \\ 25430-20750(230 \mathrm{~V}) \end{array}$ | 2 | $\begin{array}{\|l} 25430-20625 \\ 25430-20350(208 \mathrm{~V}) \\ 25430-20300(230 \mathrm{~V}) \\ 25430-20800(208 \mathrm{~V}) \\ 25430-20750(230 \mathrm{~V}) \end{array}$ |
| Control Fuses Secondary <br> Standard <br> Barriered bypass additional 150 VA <br> Option F10 | 1 | $\begin{aligned} & 25430-20400 \\ & 25430-20200 \\ & 25430-20500 \end{aligned}$ | 1 | $\begin{aligned} & 25430-20400 \\ & 25430-20200 \\ & 25430-20500 \end{aligned}$ | 1 | $\begin{aligned} & 25430-20400 \\ & 25430-20200 \\ & 25430-20500 \end{aligned}$ | 1 | $\begin{aligned} & 25430-20400 \\ & 25430-20200 \\ & 25430-20500 \end{aligned}$ |
| Pilot Light, Red | 1 | LED 25501-00003 <br> Head ZB5AV04 | 1 | LED 25501-00003 Head ZB5AV04 | 1 | LED 25501-00003 <br> Head ZB5AV04 | 1 | LED 25501-00003 Head ZB5AV04 |

1. p-t-t: Push-to-test operator.
2. Field replacement of the option board resets the power converter to the factory defaults. The user must configure the controller according to the elementary diagram provided.
3. The first three characters of the power converter catalog number may be ATV, signifying an IP20 rating, or HTV, signifying an IP00 rating.

Table 62: 208/230 V Renewable Parts, 1-50 hp VT / 1-40 hp CT (continued)

| Description | Qty | 1-5 hp | Qty | 7.5-10 hp | Qty | 15-25 hp | Qty | 30-50 hp |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Pilot Light, Yellow | 2 | LED 25501-00004 Head ZB5AV05 w/o p-t-t [1] Head ZB5AW35 w/ p-t-t [1] | 2 | LED 25501-00004 Head ZB5AV05 w/o p-t-t [1] Head ZB5AW35 w/ p-t-t [1] | 2 | LED 25501-00004 Head ZB5AV05 w/o p-t-t [1] Head ZB5AW35 w/ p-t-t [1] | 2 | LED 25501-00004 Head ZB5AV05 w/o p-t-t [1] Head ZB5AW35 w/ p-t-t [1] |
| Pilot Light, Green | 1 | LED 25501-00005 Head ZB5AV03 w/o p-t-t [1] Head ZB5AW33 w/ p-t-t [1] | 1 | LED 25501-00005 Head ZB5AV03 w/o p-t-t [1] Head ZB5AW33 w/ p-t-t [1] | 1 | LED 25501-00005 Head ZB5AV03 w/o p-t-t [1] Head ZB5AW33 w/ p-t-t [1] | 1 | LED 25501-00005 <br> Head ZB5AV03 w/o p-t-t [1] <br> Head ZB5AW33 w/ p-t-t [1] |
| Pilot Light, Blue | 1 | LED 25501-00006 Head ZB5AV06 w/o p-t-t [1] Head ZB5AW36 w/ p-t-t [1] | 1 | LED 25501-00006 Head ZB5AV06 w/o p-t-t [1] Head ZB5AW36 w/ p-t-t [1] | 1 | LED 25501-00006 Head ZB5AV06 w/o p-t-t [1] Head ZB5AW36 w/ p-t-t [1] | 1 | LED 25501-00006 Head ZB5AV06 w/o p-t-t [1] Head ZB5AW36 w/ p-t-t [1] |
| Pilot Light Mounting Collar w/ Light Module | 1 | ZB5AV6 | 1 | ZB5AV6 | 1 | ZB5AV6 | 1 | ZB5AV6 |
| Pilot Light Mounting Collar w/ Light Module and 1 N.O. and 1 N.C. Contact for p-t-t [1] | 1 | ZB5AW065 | 1 | ZB5AW065 | 1 | ZB5AW065 | 1 | ZB5AW065 |
| 1/O Extension [2] | 1 | VW3A3202 | 1 | VW3A3202 | 1 | VW3A3202 | 1 | VW3A3202 |
| LONWORKS [2] | 1 | VW3A3312 | 1 | VW3A3312 | 1 | VW3A3312 | 1 | VW3A3312 |
| Modbus [2] | 1 | VW3A3303 | 1 | VW3A3303 | 1 | VW3A3303 | 1 | VW3A3303 |
| Metasys N2 [2] | 1 | VW3A3318 | 1 | VW3A3318 | 1 | VW3A3318 | 1 | VW3A3318 |
| 24 Vdc Supply | 1 | ABL7CEM24003 | 1 | ABL7CEM24003 | 1 | ABL7CEM24003 | 1 | ABL7CEM24003 |
| Stirring Fan Assembly | 1 | N/A | 1 | 31158-065-50 | 1 | 31158-065-50 | 1 | 31158-065-50 |
| Heatsink Fans | 1 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { VZ3V1203 } \\ & \text { (1-3 hp VT, 1-2 hp CT) } \\ & \text { VZ3V1209 } \\ & \text { (5 hp VT, 3-5 hp CT) } \end{aligned}$ | 1 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { VZ3V1209 (7.5 hp VT) } \\ & \text { VZ3V1204 } \\ & \text { (10 hp VT, } 7.5 \mathrm{hp} \text { CT) } \\ & \text { VZ3V1210 (10 hp CT) } \end{aligned}$ | 1 | VZ3V1210 (15 hp VT) <br> VZ3V1205 <br> (20-25 hp VT, 15-20 hp CT) <br> VZ3V1211 (25 hp CT) | 1 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { VZ3V1211 } \\ & \text { (30-40 hp VT, } 30 \mathrm{hp} \mathrm{CT} \text { ) } \\ & \text { VZ3V1207 } \\ & \text { (50 hp VT, } 40 \mathrm{hp} \text { CT) } \end{aligned}$ |
| Plenum Fan Assembly | - | N/A | - | N/A | 1 | 31164-214-50 | 1 | 31164-214-50 |
| Filter for Input Plenum <br> Barriered <br> Enclosure | - | $\begin{array}{\|l\|} \hline \text { N/A } \\ 31164-152-01 \end{array}$ | $\begin{aligned} & - \\ & 1 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{array}{\|l\|} \hline \text { N/A } \\ 31164-152-01 \end{array}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 1 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{array}{\|l\|} \hline 31164-152-01 \\ 31164-153-01 \end{array}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 1 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 31164-153-01 \\ & 31164-174-01 \end{aligned}$ |
| Circuit Breaker Handle | 1 | 3 in. handle for wall mount and barriered floor mount enclosure: 9421LH3 | 1 | 3 in. handle for wall mount and barriered floor mount enclosure: 9421LH3 | 1 | 6 in. handle for floor mount enclosure: 9421LH6 | 1 | 6 in. handle for floor mount enclosure: 9421LH6 |

1. p-t-t: Push-to-test operator.
2. Field replacement of the option board resets the power converter to the factory defaults. The user must configure the controller according to the elementary diagram provided.
3. The first three characters of the power converter catalog number may be ATV, signifying an IP20 rating, or HTV, signifying an IP00 rating.

## Appendix B—Field Installation of Inlet Vent Filter Assembly

## Overview

Figure 32: M-Flex Controller with Inlet Vent Filter Assembly Installed


## Installation

This appendix contains installation instructions for a foam filter assembly. The assembly is installed onto the enclosure door over the bottom inlet ventilation louvers of the M-Flex adjustable speed controller unit. The assembly is available only for 100-450 hp CT and 125-500 hp VT M-Flex drives.

When installed correctly, the filter will capture some contaminants in a foam filter media rated at 10 pores per inch. The factory installs the foam filter assembly as standard for 1G gasketed enclosures. The foam filter assembly is available only as a field installed option on Type 1 enclosures.

This filter reduces the amount of contaminants pulled through the cooling vents of the controller unit. Filters are not required to maintain the UL Listing of the unit for Type 1 integrity.

The assembly contains the parts listed in Table 63.
Table 63: Inlet Vent Filter Assembly Parts

| Controller Rating (hp) |  | Description | Part Number | Quantity |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $100-200$ CT | $125-250$ VT | Outer filter bracket | $80444-132-02$ | 1 |
|  |  | Inner filter bracket | $80444-133-02$ | 1 |
|  |  | Foam filter element | $80444-134-01$ | 1 |
| $250-450$ CT | $300-500$ VT | Filter | $80444-134-02$ | 1 |

Each filter media is pre-cut to fit the inlet vent of a particular drive horsepower size.

To install the inlet vent filter assembly:

1. With the door closed, install the filter brackets (outer and inner) over the louvers as shown in Figure 33 on page 116 using the hardware provided in the pre-drilled holes around the louvers.
2. Insert the foam filter element into the opening at the top of the filter bracket. The element should be completely inside the filter brackets.

Figure 33: Inlet Vent Filter Assembly Hardware Locations


## Maintenance

Higher Horsepower Controllers (250-450 hp CT, 300-500 hp VT)

Enclosure sizes H-J controllers in 1 G (gasketed) enclosures include a filter over the lower door vents. The maintenance procedures for the controller require that the filter element be inspected and cleaned every six months, or more frequently if indicated by service conditions and your established maintenance schedule.

To clean the filter element:

1. Remove the filter element from the front door bracket by pushing the filter element up from the bottom of the filter bracket, using the access slots in the bottom of the bracket. Once the filter element is partially above the bracket, remove it by pulling it out of the top of the bracket.
2. Vacuum and wash the filter thoroughly.
3. Dry the filter completely and re-install it.

NOTE: Replace the filter element if it becomes damaged or deteriorates. See Table 63 on page 115 for a list of filter part numbers.

To prevent overheating and to allow proper air flow, maintain the clearances shown in Figures 11 to 16 on pages 41 to 46 . Every six months, inspect and clean the filters if needed. Vacuum and wash the filters thoroughly, then dry and reinstall them.

NOTE: Replace the filter element if it becomes damaged or deteriorates. See Table 63 on page 115 for the filter part number.

## Appendix C—Field Replacement of Power Fuses

## Overview

This appendix contains instructions for replacing the power fuses in controllers with the following ratings:

- 250-450 hp CT
- 300-500 hp VT


## Power Fuse Replacement

## A DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRIC SHOCK, EXPLOSION, OR ARC FLASH

- Apply appropriate personal protective equipment (PPE) and follow safe electrical work practices. See NFPA 70E.
- This equipment must only be installed and serviced by qualified electrical personnel.
- Turn off all power supplying this equipment before working on or inside equipment.
- Always use a properly rated voltage sensing device to confirm power is off.
- Replace all devices, doors, and covers before turning on power to this equipment.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

When replacing the power fuses, refer to Figure 34 on page 118.

1. Turn off all power supplying this equipment before working on or inside the equipment. Always use a properly rated voltage sensing device to confirm that power is off.
2. Loosen the bolts holding the clamps on each end of the Phase A fuse.
3. Push the fuse down until clear of the top clamp, then pull the fuse toward the front of the enclosure while lifting it clear of the bottom clamp.
NOTE: If the power wires block removal of the fuse:
Loosen the wire-connector lug of the wire in front of the fuse, then pull the wire free of the lug.
4. Using a new fuse of the same class and size as the one removed, repeat Step 3 in reverse order.
5. Using the torque values specified in Table 64 on page 118:
a. Tighten the two bolts of the top clamp holding the fuse.
b. Tighten the two bolts of the bottom clamp.
6. If you removed the power wire, reinstall it into the lug. Tighten it to the torque value specified in Table 64 on page 118.
7. Repeat steps $1-5$ for Phases B and C.
8. Close and latch the door before turning on power to the equipment.

Table 64: Recommended Fuse Tightening Torques

| Description | lb-ft | N $\bullet m$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Wire | $25-32$ | $34-43$ |
| Clamp | $11-13$ | $15-17$ |

Figure 34: Power Fuse Locations

NOTE: Refer to Table 61 on page 112 for fuse ordering information.


## Index

## Numerics

24 Vdc power supply 101

## A

A07 13, 25, 95
A08 13, 26, 97
A09 13, 28, 98
A10 13, 29, 99
acceleration ramp range 22
additional control power VA 99
additional interlocks 92
AFC fault reset 100
AFC-off-bypass selector switch 94
altitude 22
analog card
see I/O extension card
Apogee P1 communications 28
auto speed ref. 13, 29, 99
auto transfer to bypass 100

## B

B07 13, 25, 95
B08 13, 26, 97
B09 13, 28, 98
B10 13, 29, 99, 103
BACnet communications 28
barriered bypass 46, 93
Bluetooth communications 28
branch circuit
components 17, 57
feeder protection 17-21
bus voltage, measuring 61
bypass operation 94

## C

C07 13, 25, 95
C08 13, 26, 97
C09 13, 28, 98
C10 13, 29, 99
cable
input 57
output 59
capacitance 59
cards, option 13, 28
catalog numbers 12
check valve 101
circuit breaker
handle 112, 114
codes and standards 22, 29, 51, 99
communication options
see option cards
communication-auto-off-hand 25, 95-96
component locations 64
conductor
choosing 62
grounding 58
grouping 63
motor power 59
conduit
choosing 56-57
entry 51
control options 13, 25, 95-96
control power VA, additional 99
control wiring 75
cooling 11, 30
cUL certification 29, 99
current 22
output 14-16
D
D07 13, 25, 95
D08 13, 27, 97
D09 13, 28, 98
D10 13, 29, 99, 104
deceleration ramp range 22
definition of terms 10
DeviceNet communications 28, 98
diagnostic tools 103
dimensions 32-46
displacement power factor 22
door, opening 49, 106, 108
drive only configuration 92

## E

E07 13, 25, 95
E08 13, 27, 97
E09 13, 28, 98
E10 13, 29, 99
efficiency 22
emergency stop 100
interlock 92
enclosure 12, 22
engraved nameplates 101
environment 11
Ethernet communications 28, 98

## F

F07 13, 25, 95
F08 13, 27, 97
F09 13, 28, 98
F10 13, 29, 99
factory modifications
card options (communication) 13, 28
control options 13, 25, 95-96
light options 13, 26-27, 97
miscellaneous options 13, 29-93, 99
factory settings 90
fasteners 11, 51
fault reset 12, 76, 90, 95
features 23
Fipio communications 28
fire/freezestat interlock 92
forced local 76, 98
forward/reverse selector switch 25, 95-96
frequency specifications 22

## G

G09 13, 28, 98
G10 13, 29, 99
galvanic isolation 22
glossary 10
graphic display terminal 22
option to omit 13, 29, 99
grounding 63

## H

H09 13, 28, 98
H10 13, 29, 99
handling 50
hand-off-auto selector switch 25
harmonic distortion 17, 99
harmonic filter 101
hazard categories 7
heatsink fan assembly
installing 109
removing 108
high speed setting 81
hoisting 50
humidity 22

## I

I/O extension card 13, 28, 98
I10 13, 29, 99
inductance 60
input
cable 57
frequency 22
power 56
voltage 22
wiring 57
installation
electrical 56
mechanical 51
integrated bypass 46, 93
Interbus communications 28
interlocks 92
J
J09 13, 28, 98
J10 13, 29, 99

## K

K09 13, 28, 98
K10 13, 29, 100

## L

L09 13, 28, 98
L10 13, 29, 100
lifting 50
light options 13, 26-27, 97
lightning arrestors 60
line contactor 13, 29, 99, 103
line reactor $13,17,29,99$
local/remote selector switch 25, 95-96

LonWorks communications 13, 28, 98
low speed setting 82

## M

M09 13, 28, 98
M10 13, 29, 100
Metasys N2 communications 13, 28, 98
miscellaneous options 13, 29-93, 99
Modbus communications 13, 28, 98
Modbus Plus communications 28, 98
modifications
see factory modifications
motor
elapsed time meter 100
power conductors 59
protection 22
rotation, correcting direction 80
space heater sequencing 101
terminal connection 64
mounting
clearance 32-46
dimensions 32-46
environment 11
fasteners 11,51
precautions 11
suitable surface 51

## N

N.O. aux. contact
auto mode 100
bypass run 100
drive fault 100
drive run 100
nameplate identification 11
nameplates, engraved 101
noise
class 62
suppressors 56
nuisance tripping 17, 59

## 0

009 13, 28, 98
010 13, 29, 100
operator controls 93-94
option 310 13, 29, 101
option 410 13, 30, 101
option 610 13, 30, 101
option cards 13, 28, 77
options 13, 28-93, 95
communication cards 13, 28, 77
control 13, 25, 95-96
light 13, 26-27, 97
miscellaneous 13, 29-93, 99
selection rules 12
output
cable 59-60
current 14-16
voltage 22
wiring 56
overcurrent protective devices 57
Overload 79
overload protection 22
overload relay dial 79

## P

P09 13, 28, 98
P10 13, 29, 100
permanent wire marker sleeves 99
pilot lights 26-27
plenum fan 109
pollution degree 11, 22
power circuit
R 95
S 95
T 95
W 92
Y 93
Z 93
power converter
replacing 77, 105-107
power factor correction capacitors 60
Profibus communications 28
PSI transducer 13, 29, 99
push button
start 25, 95-96
stop 25, 95-96
push-to-test pilot light 100

## Q

Q09 13, 28, 98
Q10 13, 29, 100

## R

R10 13, 29, 100
ratings 14-16, 18-22
RFI suppressor 101

## S

S10 13, 29, 100
seal water solenoid 101
seismic qualification 51,99
selector switch
AFC-off-bypass 94
communication-auto-off-hand 25, 9596
forward/reverse 25, 95-96
hand-off-auto 25
local/remote 25, 95-96
parts 24
test-normal 94
shielding 63
shipping damage 49
shock 22
smoke purge 13, 29, 99
space heater sequencing 101
spare parts 111
special symbols 7
specifications 22
speed 22, 81
speed potentiometer 25,96
standard features 23
start push button 25, 95-96
startup 77
stirring fans, replacing 109
stop push button 25, 95-96
storing the controller 49
switching frequency 14-16, 22

## T

T10 13, 29, 100
technical support 110
temperature 22
terminal strip operation 89
terminals
control 76
locations 64
power 68
terminology 10
test-normal operation 94
test-normal selector switch 12, 94
three-wire control 92
time meter, motor elapsed 100
total dissipated watts loss 30
transformer capacity 99
transient overvoltage 17
two-wire control 92

## U

U10 13, 29, 101
V
V10 13, 29, 101
VA, additional 99
vibration 22
voltage
imbalance 17
input 22
output 22

## W

W10 13, 29, 101
weights 47
wire class 62
wiring
control 75
general practices 56,63
grounding 63
methods 63
separation of circuits 63
shielding 63
terminal locations 64
wire class 62
X
X10 13, 29, 101
Y
Y10 13, 29, 101
Z
Z10 13, 29, 101

## M-Flex ${ }^{\text {TM }}$ Adjustable Speed Controllers <br> Instruction Bulletin

Schneider Electric
1415 S. Roselle Road
Palatine, IL 60067 USA
1-888-778-2733
www.schneider-electric.us

Electrical equipment should be installed, operated, serviced, and maintained only by qualified personnel. No responsibility is assumed by Schneider Electric for any consequences arising out of the use of this material.
© 2006-2014 Schneider Electric All Rights Reserved
Schneider Electric and Square D are trademarks owned by Schneider Electric Industries SAS or its affiliated companies. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

30072-451-52 Rev. 02, 07/2014
Replaces 30072-451-52 Rev. 01, 06/2012


[^0]:    1. Input line currents are based on the source impedance capable of providing the listed amperage levels.
    2. " $\nabla$ " can be " $G$ " or " $B$ ". " $G$ " denotes a Type 1 enclosure; " $B$ " denotes a Type $1 G$ enclosure.
    "_" indicates that the catalog number continues. See pages 12 and 13 for a detailed description of catalog numbers.
[^1]:    1. Input line currents are based on the source impedance capable of providing the listed amperage levels.
    2. "•" can be "A" or "G". "A" denotes a Type 12/12K enclosure; "G" denotes a Type 1 enclosure.
    "_" indicates that the catalog number continues. See pages 12 and 13 for a detailed description of catalog numbers.
[^2]:    1. Input line currents are based on the source impedance capable of providing the listed amperage levels.
[^3]:    1 When barriered bypass (Z06) is selected, a class 8536 Type S NEMA size 5 starter is provided. Select melting alloy overload thermal units (not included) appropriate for the current and application.

[^4]:    1 Fused with Class J time-delay fuses. Refer to Table 61 on page 112 for details.

[^5]:    1 User documentation for Altivar 61 and Altivar 71 controllers is available electronically from the Technical Library at www.schneider-electric.com.

